



## Event Summary

### CDA Implementation Guide

29 August 2019 v2.0

Draft for external use

Document ID: DH-xxxx:2019

Draft Version 001

**THIS SPECIFICATION IS AN UNTESTED DRAFT AND IS NOT SUITABLE FOR IMPLEMENTATION.**

DRAFT



DRAFT

## Disclaimer

The Australian Digital Health Agency (“the Agency”) makes the information and other material (“Information”) in this document available in good faith but without any representation or warranty as to its accuracy or completeness. The Agency cannot accept any responsibility for the consequences of any use of the Information. As the Information is of a general nature only, it is up to any person using or relying on the Information to ensure that it is accurate, complete and suitable for the circumstances of its use.

## Document control

This document is maintained in electronic form and is uncontrolled in printed form. It is the responsibility of the user to verify that this copy is the latest revision.

## Security

The information contained herein must only be used for the purpose for which it is supplied and must not be disclosed other than explicitly agreed in writing with the Australian Digital Health Agency.

## Copyright © 2019 Australian Digital Health Agency

This document is copyright. All rights reserved. Unless otherwise noted, no part of this document may be used, reproduced or altered in any form or by any means, without prior written consent of the Australian Digital Health Agency (Agency). No part of this document may be reproduced or used in any form or by any means whatsoever without the permission of the Agency. This document includes material that is HL7 FHIR Copyright © 2011+ HL7 licensed under Creative Commons No Rights Reserved. All copies of this document must include this copyright statement and the following information in its entirety.

OFFICIAL

# Document Information

## Key Information

Owner	National Health Chief Information Officer, Infrastructure Operations
Contact for enquiries	Australian Digital Health Agency Help Centre
t:	1300 901 001
e:	<a href="mailto:help@digitalhealth.gov.au">help@digitalhealth.gov.au</a>

## Product Version History

Product ver- sion	Date	Release comments
1.3	1 NaN	Initial public release.
1.4	1 NaN	This version implements changes authorised in September 2014 (by CCB--345).
2.0	29 Aug 2019	This version implements terminology updates and transitions from openEHR based models to FHIR-based models. This is a backwards incompatible release

## Related Documents

Name	Version/Release Date
<a href="#">Australian Base Profiles Implementation Guide</a>	v1.0.0 (Standard for Trial Use), Continuous Integration Build
<a href="#">FHIR</a>	Release 3 (STU), Issued 19 April 2017
<a href="#">Participant Model Specification</a>	Version 1.0, Issued 01 November 2018
<a href="#">Common - Clinical Document</a>	Version 1.5.2, Issued 28 February 2019
<a href="#">CDA Rendering Specification</a>	Version 1.0, Issued 07 March 2012
<a href="#">Shared Health Summary Information Requirements</a>	Version 1.1, Issued 10 April 2015
<a href="#">Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance</a>	Version 1.0, Issued 10 October 2011
<a href="#">Clinical Documents Common Conformance Profile</a>	Version 1.7, Issued 21 December 2017

DRAFT

# Acknowledgements

## Council of Australian Governments

The Australian Digital Health Agency is jointly funded by the Australian Government and all state and territory governments.

## Regenstrief Institute (LOINC)

This material contains content from LOINC™ (<http://loinc.org>). The LOINC table, LOINC codes, LOINC panels and forms file, and LOINC linguistic variants file are copyright © 1995-2015, Regenstrief Institute, Inc. and the Logical Observation Identifiers Names and Codes (LOINC) Committee and available at no cost under the license at <https://loinc.org/terms-of-use/>. LOINC is a trademark of Regenstrief Institute, Inc., registered in the United States.

## IHTSDO (SNOMED CT)

This material includes SNOMED Clinical Terms™ (SNOMED CT®) which is used by permission of the International Health Terminology Standards Development Organisation (IHTSDO). All rights reserved. SNOMED CT® was originally created by The College of American Pathologists. "SNOMED" and "SNOMED CT" are registered trademarks of the IHTSDO, (<http://www.ihtsdo.org/>).

## HL7 FHIR

This product includes all or a portion of material that is HL7 FHIR Copyright © 2011+ HL7 licensed under Creative Commons "No Rights Reserved".

## HL7 International

This document includes excerpts of HL7™ International standards and other HL7 International material. HL7 International is the publisher and holder of copyright in the excerpts. The publication, reproduction and use of such excerpts is governed by the HL7 IP Policy (see <http://www.hl7.org/legal/ippolicy.cfm>) and the HL7 International License Agreement. HL7 and CDA are trademarks of Health Level Seven International and are registered with the United States Patent and Trademark Office. FHIR is a registered trademark of Health Level Seven International.

This product includes all or a portion of the HL7 Vocabulary, or is derived from the HL7 Vocabulary, subject to a license from Health Level Seven International. Your use of the HL7 Vocabulary also is subject to this license, a copy of which is accessible through the following link: <http://www.hl7.org/permalink/?VocabTables>. The current complete HL7 Vocabulary is also available through this link. The HL7 Vocabulary is copyright © 1989-2010, Health Level Seven International. All rights reserved. THE HL7 VOCABULARY IS PROVIDED "AS IS." ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE DISCLAIMED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

DRAFT

# Table of Contents

<b>1. Introduction</b>	1
1.1. Document purpose and scope	1
1.2. Context and use	1
1.3. How to read this document	2
1.4. Editorial note	2
1.5. Intended audience	2
1.6. Known issues	2
<b>2. Guidance</b>	5
2.1. Clinical Document Architecture Release 2	5
2.2. Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions	6
2.3. Conformance conventions	7
2.4. Mapping presentation and structure	10
<b>3. Conformance</b>	13
3.1. Conformance requirements	13
3.2. CDA narratives	14
<b>4. Event Summary hierarchy</b>	15
4.1. Hierarchy	15
4.2. Expanded hierarchy	17
<b>5. CDA Header templates</b>	23
5.1. ClinicalDocument	23
5.2. LegalAuthenticator	26
5.3. Administrative Observations	27
<b>6. Document CDA templates</b>	29
6.1. ClinicalDocument (Event Summary)	29
<b>7. Participation CDA templates</b>	33
7.1. recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier)	33
7.2. participant (Patient contact)	38
7.3. participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization)	39
7.4. participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner)	41
7.5. author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)	43
7.6. custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier)	45
7.7. informant (Base Patient)	47
7.8. informant (Base RelatedPerson)	49
7.9. informant (Base Practitioner)	51
<b>8. Entity CDA templates</b>	53
8.1. providerOrganization (Base Organization)	53
8.2. participant (Organization contact)	55
8.3. representedOrganization (Base Organization)	56
8.4. assignedPerson ()	58
<b>9. Section CDA templates</b>	61
9.1. section (Event Overview)	61
9.2. section (Allergies)	63
9.3. section (Medications)	65
9.4. section (Medical History)	67
9.5. section (Immunisations)	69
9.6. section (Diagnostic Investigations)	71
<b>10. Act CDA templates</b>	73
10.1. encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	73
10.2. encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)	75
10.3. observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)	78
10.4. act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)	85
10.5. substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine)	88
10.6. observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	93
10.7. substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine)	95
10.8. observation (Summary Statement of Condition)	98
10.9. procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure)	103
10.10. ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification)	105

<b>11. Common patterns .....</b>	107
11.1. code .....	107
11.2. id .....	110
11.3. time .....	112
11.4. Entity Identifier .....	114
11.5. Personal Relationship .....	116
11.6. Qualification .....	118
<b>A. Complex data type mappings to CDA (R2) .....</b>	119
A.1. Identifier .....	120
A.2. HumanName .....	125
A.3. Address .....	127
A.4. Address as Australian Address .....	129
A.5. ContactPoint .....	131
A.6. Dosage .....	133
A.7. Timing .....	137
<b>B. Examples .....</b>	143
B.1. Event Summary example 1 .....	144
B.2. Event Summary example 2 .....	151
B.3. Event Summary example 3 .....	152
<b>C. Mapping from requirements .....</b>	159
References .....	161

## List of Examples

11.1. code .....	108
11.2. id .....	111
11.3. Simple timestamp .....	112
11.4. Low time .....	112
11.5. Interval timestamp 1 .....	112
11.6. Interval timestamp 2 .....	113
11.7. Width time .....	113
11.8. Entity Identifier .....	115
11.9. Personal Relationship .....	117
A.1. Identifier .....	122
A.2. HumanName .....	126
A.3. Address .....	128
A.4. Address .....	130
A.5. ContactPoint .....	132
A.6. Dosage .....	135
A.7. Timing .....	140
B.1. Event Summary example 1 .....	144
B.2. Event Summary example 2 .....	151
B.3. Event Summary example 3 .....	152

DRAFT

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Document purpose and scope

The primary aim of the implementation guide is to take implementers step by step through mapping each element of the Event Summary (ES) model ([Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide \[DH2019g\]](#)) to a corresponding CDA attribute or element. The resulting CDA document can be used for the electronic exchange of ES information between healthcare providers.

This implementation guide is not to be used as a guide to presentation (or rendering) of the data. Beyond defining conformance requirements on CDA narratives it contains no information as to how the data described by it should be displayed and no such guidance should be inferred from This implementation guide.

Reference has been made to International and Australian Standards, and to Standards from Health Level Seven. The following standard is referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of its content constitutes requirements for the purposes of this specification: [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#).

Wherever possible, material in this specification is based on existing standards. All efforts have been made to minimise divergence from the HL7 Australia profiles of HL7 International standards ([Australian Base Profiles Implementation Guide \[HL7AUBIG\]](#)) to provide for system interoperability and compatibility with other profiles. Issues of an editorial nature in the source material (such as spelling or punctuation errors) are intentionally reproduced.

## 1.2 Context and use

A CDA implementation guide is part of a package of documents and files that support the development of software to exchange a type of clinical document, a specification package.

An Agency clinical document specification package supports software developers to create and interpret instances of a clinical document. The core of each package is a specification of the information content of instances of the clinical document.

Supplementary contents of the package include statements of scenarios for which the specification is appropriate, guidance on implementing the specification, and guidance on testing purported instances.

The contents may include:

- statement of requirements
- CDA implementation guide (CDA IG) – a statement of constraints and custom extensions on [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#)
- FHIR implementation guide (FHIR IG) – a statement of constraints and custom extensions on [FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#)
- template package library – a set of Schematron schema to test conformance of CDA documents with the specification
- conformance profile – a statement of conformance requirements for exchanging documents within a particular scenario such as the My Health Record
- A set of release notes

Specification packages contain only files relevant to the particular clinical document. Specifications that are common to many clinical documents and should be considered part of the specification package, as directed by the relevant release note and conformance profile, are contained in the [Common - Clinical Document \[DH2019a\]](#).

## 1.3 How to read this document

This implementation guide contains descriptions of both constraints on the CDA and, where necessary, custom extensions to the CDA, for the purposes of fulfilling the requirements for Australian implementations of ES.

These descriptions are defined as a set of CDA templates (see [Conformance conventions](#)) presented in CDA mapping tables (see [Mapping presentation and structure](#)). The mapping tables take implementers step by step through mapping each element of the ES model to a corresponding CDA attribute or element.

A logical view of the ES model ([FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#) StructureDefinitions) is presented as a tree structure in a hierarchical table (see [4 Event Summary hierarchy](#)). The ES model is published as a set of [FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#) profiles in [Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide \[DH2019g\]](#).

The starting point for the CDA templates is the clinical document model template defined in [ClinicalDocument \(Event Summary\)](#), which references the additional templates necessary to assert conformance for this implementation guide.

## 1.4 Editorial note

This implementation guide is an early working specification that is available for comment and review. It may be used to solicit feedback and to provide insight as to the expected content in a forthcoming stable and approved version of the specification.

This implementation guide may not be considered to be complete enough or sufficiently reviewed to be safe for implementation and use in production systems. It may have known issues and still be in development.

It is intended to supersede [Event Summary Structured Content Specification \[NEHT2015b\]](#) and [Event Summary CDA Implementation Guide \[NEHT2015f\]](#). This new, backwards incompatible version, is intended to address alignment to HL7 FHIR and is the result of work undertaken in conjunction with HL7 Australia.

## 1.5 Intended audience

This implementation guide is aimed at software development teams, architects, designers, clinicians and informatics researchers who are responsible for the delivery of clinical applications, infrastructure components and messaging interfaces, and also for those who wish to evaluate the clinical suitability of the Agency-endorsed specifications.

This implementation guide and related artefacts are technical in nature and the audience is expected to be familiar with the language of health data specifications and to have some familiarity with health information standards and specifications, such as CDA and Standards Australia IT-014 documents. Definitions and examples are provided to clarify relevant terminology usage and intent.

## 1.6 Known issues

This section lists known issues with this specification at the time of publishing. We are working on solutions to these issues and encourage comments to help us develop these solutions.

Reference	Description
Diagnostic Investigations section	Design of this section and its entries is in progress. It will be updated to reference appropriate Agency models (profiles) in the future.

Reference	Description
Terminology publication	The following terminology resources are not yet available in NCTS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Healthcare Identifier Geographic Area</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Encounter Status FHIR to Encounter Act Status HL7 v3 version1 STU3</a></li><li>• <a href="#">AllergyIntolerance Type FHIR to Idiosyncratic Adverse Reaction Type</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Composition Status FHIR to Australian CDA Document Life-cycle Status</a></li><li>• <a href="#">List Status FHIR to Document Act Status v3</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Non-Clinical Empty Reason FHIR to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor</a></li></ul>
Appendix C. Examples	This chapter is a placeholder - examples are yet to be done.
Appendix D. Mapping from requirements	This chapter is a placeholder - mappings yet to be done.
<i>Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide [DH2019g]</i>	The corresponding Event Summary FHIR IG is currently in progress; draft content is available from <a href="https://github.com/AuDigitalHealth/ci-fhir-stu3">https://github.com/AuDigitalHealth/ci-fhir-stu3</a> (public)   <a href="https://stash.digitalhealth.gov.au/projects/CIL/repos/ci-fhir-stu3/browse">https://stash.digitalhealth.gov.au/projects/CIL/repos/ci-fhir-stu3/browse</a> (internal).

DRAFT

## 2 Guidance

### 2.1 Clinical Document Architecture Release 2

A CDA document is an XML document built following the rules described in the CDA specification, which conforms to the HL7 CDA schema provided by HL7. The CDA document is based on the semantics provided by the [HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary \[HL7V3DT\]](#).

A CDA document has two main parts: the header and the body.

The CDA document header is consistent across all CDA documents, regardless of document type. The header identifies and classifies the document and provides information on authentication, the encounter, the patient, and the involved providers.

The body contains the clinical report. The body can be marked-up text (narrative, renderable text) or a combination of both marked-up text and structured data. The marked-up text can be transformed to XHTML and displayed to a human. The structured data allows machine processing of the information shown in the narrative section.

All clinical information is required to be marked up in CDA narratives. These narratives are CDA-defined hypertext, able to be rendered in web browsers with only a standard accompanying transformation. This transformation is produced and distributed by HL7.

The rendered narrative can stand alone as a source of authenticated information for consuming parties. Content from the CDA body is not to be omitted from the narrative.

Further information and conformance requirements on the CDA narrative is available in [CDA narratives](#).

The following references are recommended to gain a better understanding of CDA:

- [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#)
- [HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary \[HL7V3DT\]](#)
- [CDA Examples \[RING2009\]](#)
- [CDA Validation Tools: infoway\\_release\\_2\\_2X\\_18.zip \[INFO2009\]](#)

## 2.2 Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions

As part of the CDA, standard extensions are allowed as follows:

Locally-defined markup may be used when local semantics have no corresponding representation in the CDA specification. CDA seeks to standardize the highest level of shared meaning while providing a clean and standard mechanism for tagging meaning that is not shared. In order to support local extensibility requirements, it is permitted to include additional XML elements and attributes that are not included in the CDA schema. These extensions should not change the meaning of any of the standard data items, and receivers must be able to safely ignore these elements. Document recipients must be able to faithfully render the CDA document while ignoring extensions.

Extensions may be included in the instance in a namespace other than the HL7v3 namespace, but must not be included within an element of type ED (e.g., <text> within <procedure>) since the contents of an ED datatype within the conformant document may be in a different namespace. Since all conformant content (outside of elements of type ED) is in the HL7 namespace, the sender can put any extension content into a foreign namespace (any namespace other than the HL7 namespace). Receiving systems must not report an error if such extensions are present. [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#)

A number of extensions to CDA have been defined in this implementation guide. To maintain consistency, the same development paradigm has been used as CDA.

These Australian Digital Health Agency CDA extensions have been added to the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema and are incorporated in the namespace <http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0> as shown in [Appendix B, Examples](#). Future versions of CDA extensions will be versioned as per the following example:

<http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/4.0>

The Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema therefore differs from the base HL7 CDA W3C XML Schema (referred to in this document as the HL7 CDA Schema). CDA documents which include extensions will fail to validate against the HL7 CDA Schema – this is a known limitation.

An Event Summary document that conforms to this specification will validate against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema that accompanies this specification, and will validate against the HL7 CDA Schema once the extensions have been removed. Note that merely passing schema validation does not ensure conformance. For more information, refer to [Conformance requirements](#).

## 2.3 Conformance conventions

### Templates

This implementation guide specifies the CDA templates for implementing the document model that is the subject of this implementation guide, i.e. Event Summary. >A CDA template is a set of constraints, and where necessary, custom extensions to [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#).

In this implementation guide CDA templates are presented in a CDA mapping table and indicated by the presence of a `templateId`.

Template identifiers (`templateId`) are unique to each CDA template. When valued in an instance, the template identifier signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints. The root value of this attribute (e.g. `@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.1002.226"`) provides a unique identifier for the template in question. The extension value of this attribute (e.g. `@extension="1.0"`) provides the version identifier for the template in question.

### Open and closed templates

A CDA template may be either an open template or a closed template. In an open template all of the features of the CDA R2 base specification [HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary \[HL7V3DT\]](#) are allowed except as constrained by explicitly specified constraints. In a closed template everything that is allowed must be explicitly specified and nothing further may be allowed.

For example if a specification of a CDA template says nothing about the use of the `id` element:

- In an open template context this means that `id` is allowed as specified in the schema
- In a closed template context this means that no use of `id` is allowed

The template context in this implementation guide is that of an open template unless otherwise stated.

### Terminology binding

Vocabulary is specified in this implementation guide, in some cases binding an element to a value set or binding an attribute to a single fixed code. For guidance on coding common clinical concepts in CDA documents see [Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance \[NEHT2011bv\]](#).

A value set binding, if present in this specification, will be specified in the "Constraints and comments" column of a CDA mapping table as the title of the value set (hyperlinked to its definition) followed by identification of the binding strength (hyperlinked to its definition), e.g. [v3 Code System ParticipationFunction \(required\)](#).

## Conformance verbs

Where used in this document, the keywords **SHALL**, **SHOULD**, **MAY**, **SHALL NOT** and **SHOULD NOT** from [Key Words for Use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels \[RFC2119\]](#) are to be interpreted as described in the table below.

### Conformance verbs

Conformance verb	Interpretation
<b>SHALL</b>	<p>An absolute requirement.</p> <p>Where <b>SHALL</b> appears in any conformance constraint it indicates a mandatory requirement.</p> <p>Where <b>SHALL</b> is applied to the occurrences of an element or attribute then that element or attribute must be present but can be null if the value is not known and the value has not been constrained to not allow a null value.</p>
<b>SHOULD</b>	<p>A requirement that is considered best practice or recommendation for inclusion. There may be valid reasons to ignore an item, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course.</p> <p>Where <b>SHOULD</b> appears in an conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range.</p> <p>For a sending application where <b>SHOULD</b> is applied to the occurrences of an item then that item must be present if a sending application has the data for that data element. If the value is not known the element or attribute does not need to be included.</p> <p>Implementers must support an 'optional' requirement.</p>
<b>MAY</b>	<p>A requirement that can be included or omitted as the author decides with no implications.</p> <p>Where <b>MAY</b> appears in a conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range.</p> <p>Implementers must support an 'optional' requirement.</p>
<b>SHALL NOT</b>	<p>An absolute prohibition.</p> <p>Where <b>SHALL NOT</b> appears in any conformance constraint it indicates a mandatory prohibition requirement.</p>

Conformance verb	Interpretation
<b>SHOULD NOT</b>	A requirement that is considered best practice or recommendation for against inclusion. There may be valid reasons to ignore an item, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course.  Where <b>SHOULD NOT</b> appears in a conformance constraint that constrains the allowed occurrences of an item it indicates that the item may not be present but does not override the upper bound of the cardinality range.  For a sending application where <b>SHOULD NOT</b> is applied to the occurrences of then that element or attribute must be present if a sending application has the data for that data element. If the value is not known the element or attribute does not need to be included.  Implementers must support an 'optional' requirement.

## Cardinality

The cardinality range specifies the allowable occurrences within a document instance. Cardinality range is specified in the format "m..n" where m is the minimum allowed members of the set (lower bound) and n is the maximum allowed members of the set (upper bound). The allowed values for m and n are 0, any positive integer, and \*.

The table below demonstrates a representative set of examples of cardinality range and how to interpret that cardinality range; p is positive integer greater than the minimum allowed members of the set.

Cardinality range	Interpretation
0..0	zero (explicitly prohibited)
0..1	zero or one
1..1	exactly one
0..*	zero or more
1..*	at least one
2..*	at least two
1..p	at least one and not more than p
2..p	at least two and not more than p

## 2.4 Mapping presentation and structure

The content of this implementation guide is a set of CDA templates that are presented as a mapping from the logical view of a set of models (i.e. [FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#) StructureDefinitions) to CDA. These models are published as [FHIR \[HL7FHIR3\]](#) profiles in [Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide \[DH2019g\]](#).

CDA templates are located within a 'templates' chapter, e.g. [9 Section CDA templates](#). The heading for each child section identifies the CDA schema element that is templated, and may also identify the name of part of the ES model that template corresponds to, e.g. observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) defines the CDA template of the observation CDA schema element to represent the model for Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance.

A CDA mapping table aims to take implementers step by step through mapping each element of the ES model to a corresponding CDA attribute or element. The following section describes in more detail the fields used to present the mapping content in this implementation guide.

### x.x CDA schema element (model / element)

Implementation guidance specific to the usage scenarios expected to be supported by this implementation guide may be present above the mapping table. This content is informative; there may be valid reasons not to follow this guidance, but the full implications must be understood and carefully weighed before choosing a different course.

## CDA mapping

Element	Element descrip- tion	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and com- ments
<b>CDA conformance level, e.g. CDA Header, CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements</b>					
The logical hierarchical path in the ES model expressed using names of the elements in the ES model.  If there is a name in round brackets after the path, this is the label for that element or resource.  The text in <b>bold</b> (the last in the path) is the subject for this row.  i.e. Parent (Label) > Child  e.g. AllergyIntolerance (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) > patient	The description of the element in the ES model.  (See <a href="#">Conformance conventions</a> )	The cardinality of the element in the ES model.  (See <a href="#">Conformance conventions</a> )	The type of the element (hyper-linked to the definition of the <a href="#">[HL7FHIR3]</a> type) in the ES model.  This may be expressed as a type that is further constrained by a model in the convention <type> as <model name>, e.g. <a href="#">Patient</a> as Patient with Mandatory Identifier.	<p>Context: The root context that is applied as a prefix to the CDA schema element paths in the mapping rows below</p> <p>The CDA schema element(s) in the CDA template that correspond to the model element. The syntax for this is similar to XPath:</p> <pre>/name{[index]}n</pre> <p>Where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>{ } indicates optional</li> <li>{ }n means a section that may repeat</li> <li>[index] differentiates two similar mappings</li> </ul> <p>Example:</p> <p><b>participant[location]</b>  <b>participant[location]/@typeCode="ORG"</b>  <b>participant[location]/associatedEntity</b>  <b>participant[location]/associatedEntity/@classCode="SDLOC"</b>  <b>participant[location]/associatedEntity/code</b></p> <p>A sequence of names refers to the XML path in the CDA document. The path always starts from the context as defined in the grey header row above each group of mapping rows.</p> <p>The last name is shown in bold to make the path easier to read. The last name may be a reference to an attribute or an element, as defined in the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema.</p> <p>An index after the name, such as 'participation[location]' implies that there can be two or more templates of a participation CDA schema element or that the CDA schema element name may be repeated in one or more templates. The indexes differentiate which CDA schema element is referenced in the path.</p> <p>It is possible for one model element to map to more than one CDA schema element.</p>	<p>Constraints on the CDA schema element(s).</p> <p>Terminology binding, identified by a hyperlinked value set title followed by the terminology binding strength (hyperlinked to the definition of the binding strength). When applicable, followed by a reference to a footnote that provides a hyperlink to related concept map.</p> <p>e.g. <a href="#">Address Type HL7 v3 (required)</a><sup>1</sup></p> <p>Additional information about the mapping and/or constraints which are identified by conformance verbs (See <a href="#">Conformance conventions</a>).</p> <p>e.g. See &lt;code&gt; for available attributes.</p>

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology bindings on address type[DH2019g](#) and in the CDA model are defined in [v3 map for AddressType](#) concept map.



# 3 Conformance

## 3.1 Conformance requirements

This document describes how the ES model is implemented as a CDA document. Conformance claims are not made against this implementation guide directly; rather, they are made against additional conformance profiles documented elsewhere. Any document that claims conformance to any derived conformance profile **SHALL** meet these base requirements:

- It **SHALL** be a valid HL7 CDA instance. In particular:
  - It **SHALL** be valid against the HL7 CDA schema (once extensions have been removed).
  - It **SHALL** conform to the HL7 V3 R1 data type specification.
  - It **SHALL** conform to the semantics of the RIM and Structural Vocabulary.
- It **SHALL** be valid against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema that accompanies this implementation guide after any additional extensions not in the Australian Digital Health Agency extension namespace have been removed, along with any other CDA content not described by this implementation guide.
- It **SHALL** use the mappings as they are stated in this document.
- It **SHALL** use all fixed values specified in the mappings (e.g. @attribute="FIXED\_VALUE").
- It **SHALL** be valid against the additional conformance requirements that are established in this document (i.e. any normative use of the word 'shall' identified by the term presented in uppercase and bold typeface).
- The narrative **SHALL** conform to the requirements described in this implementation guide.
- The document **SHALL** conform to the requirements specified in the CDA Rendering Specification [\[NEHT2012s\]](#).
- Any additional content included in the CDA document that is not described by this implementation guide **SHALL NOT** qualify or negate content described by this implementation guide and it **SHALL** be clinically safe for receivers of the document to ignore the non-narrative additions when interpreting the existing content.

A system that *consumes* ES CDA documents may claim conformance if it correctly processes conformant instance documents, including correctly understanding all the information in the header. It may, but is not required to, reject non-conformant documents. Conformant systems that consume ES CDA documents are not required to process any or all of the structured data entries in the CDA document, but they **SHALL** be able to correctly render the document for end-users when appropriate (see [Clinical Document Architecture Release 2](#)).

Conformance profiles of this document **MAY** make additional rules that override this document in regard to:

- Allowing the use of alternative value sets in place of the value sets specified in this document.
- Allowing the use of alternative identifiers in place of the Healthcare Identifiers Service identifiers.
- Making required data elements and section divisions optional.

## 3.2 CDA narratives

CDA requires that each section in its body include a narrative block, containing a clinically complete version of the section's encoded content using custom hypertext markup defined by HL7. The narrative is the human-readable and attestable part of a CDA document, and can stand alone as an accurate representation of the content of the document without any need to consult entries in the body.

It is a [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#) requirement that all clinical information **SHALL** be marked up in CDA narratives.

It is a [HL7 Clinical Document Architecture \[HL7CDAR2\]](#) requirement that the rendered narrative **SHALL** be able to stand alone as a source of authenticated information for consuming parties. Content from the CDA body **SHALL NOT** be omitted from the narrative.

There is no canonical markup for specific CDA components, but some conformance requirements apply:

- The narrative block **SHALL** be encapsulated within the text component of the CDA section.
- The narrative contents **SHALL** conform to the requirements specified in the CDA Rendering Specification.
  - In accordance with the requirement to completely represent section contents, elements of type [CodeableConcept](#) **SHALL** include an originalText or a displayName attribute (or both). Where available, the originalText **SHOULD** be found in the narrative, otherwise the displayName **SHOULD** be found in the narrative.
- The narrative contents **SHALL** completely and accurately represent the clinical information encoded in the section. Content **SHALL NOT** be omitted from the narrative.
- The narrative **SHALL** conform to the content requirements of the CDA specification [\[HL7CDAR2\]](#) and the XML schema.

Clinical judgement is required to determine the appropriate presentation for narrative. We may release additional guidance in this regard. The examples provided in sections of this document offer some guidance for narrative block markup and may be easily adapted as boilerplate markup.

# 4 Event Summary hierarchy

An Event Summary document is defined as:

A clinical document written by the nominated provider, which contains key pieces of information about an individual's health status and is useful to a wide range of providers in assessing individuals and delivering care. [Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide \[DH2019g\]](#)

## 4.1 Hierarchy

The hierarchy below provides a logical view of the Event Summary model as a tree structure in a hierarchical table; it is not intended to represent how the data contents are represented in a CDA document.

Each row contains information about a single element. The top level row contains two occupied cells: Name of the document model, and the Type (hyperlinked to the definition of the type).

Each following row contains three occupied cells: Name of the child element in the model, Cardinality (the lower and upper bounds on how many times this element is allowed to appear in the resource), and the Type (hyperlinked to the definition of the type). Type may be expressed as a type that is further constrained by a referenced model, e.g. Patient as Base Patient.

Name	Cardinality	Type
Composition (Event Summary)		<a href="#">DomainResource</a>
composition-author-role	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(PractitionerRole as PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
identifier	0..1	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
status	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
type	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
subject	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
encounter	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)</a>
date	1..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>
author	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
title	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
attester (Legal Attester)	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
mode	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
time	1..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>
party	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
custodian	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Organization with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
section (Event Overview)	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
title	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
text	1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>
entry	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)</a>
section (Allergies)	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
title	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
text	1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>

Name			Cardinality	Type
		entry	0..*	<a href="#">Reference</a> (AllergyIntolerance as Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)
		emptyReason	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		section (Medications)	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
		title	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
		code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		text	1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>
		entry	0..1	<a href="#">Reference</a> (List as List of Medicine Changes from an Event   <a href="#">Observation</a> as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		emptyReason	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		section (Medical History)	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
		title	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
		code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		text	1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>
		entry	0..*	<a href="#">Reference</a> (Condition as Summary Statement of Condition   <a href="#">Procedure</a> as Summary Statement of Known Procedure   <a href="#">Observation</a> as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		emptyReason	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		section (Immunisations)	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
		title	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
		code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		text	1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>
		entry	0..*	<a href="#">Reference</a> (Immunization as Summary Statement of Vaccine   <a href="#">Observation</a> as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)
		emptyReason	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		section (Diagnostic Investigations)	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
		title	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
		code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		text	1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>

## 4.2 Expanded hierarchy

The hierarchy below provides an expanded logical view of the Event Summary model as a tree structure in a hierarchical table that includes the structure of the first level of referenced models; it is not intended to represent how the data contents are represented in a CDA document.

Each row contains information about a single element. The top level row contains two occupied cells: Name of the document model, and the Type (hyperlinked to the definition of the type).

Each following row contains three occupied cells: Name of the child element in the model, Cardinality (the lower and upper bounds on how many times this element is allowed to appear in the resource), and the Type (hyperlinked to the definition of the type). Type may be expressed as a type that is further constrained by a referenced model, e.g. Patient as Base Patient.

Name		Cardinality	Type
Composition (Event Summary)			<a href="#">DomainResource</a>
	composition-author-role	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(<a href="#">PractitionerRole</a> as PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
	identifier	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
	active	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>
	period	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>
	practitioner	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(<a href="#">Practitioner</a> as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
	organization	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(<a href="#">Organization</a> as Base Organization)</a>
	code	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	specialty	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	location	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(<a href="#">Location</a>)</a>
	healthcareService	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(<a href="#">HealthcareService</a>)</a>
	telecom	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>
	availableTime	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
	daysOfWeek	0..*	<a href="#">code</a>
	allDay	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>
	availableStartTime	0..1	<a href="#">time</a>
	availableEndTime	0..1	<a href="#">time</a>
	notAvailable	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
	description	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
	during	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>
	availabilityExceptions	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>
	identifier	0..1	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
	status	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
	type	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	subject	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(<a href="#">Patient</a> as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
	birthPlace	0..1	<a href="#">Address</a>
	indigenous-status	0..1	<a href="#">Coding</a>
	closing-the-gap-registration	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>
	patient-mothersMaidenName	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>
	identifier	1..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
	active	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>
	name	0..*	<a href="#">HumanName</a>
	telecom	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>
	gender	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>

Name			Cardinality	Type
	birthDate		0..1	<a href="#">date</a>
	date-accuracy-indicator		0..1	<a href="#">Coding</a>
	birthTime		0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>
	deceased		0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a> <a href="#">dateTime</a>
	date-accuracy-indicator		0..1	<a href="#">Coding</a>
	address		0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>
	maritalStatus		0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	multipleBirth		0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a> <a href="#">integer</a>
	contact		0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
	relationship		0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	name		0..1	<a href="#">HumanName</a>
	telecom		0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>
	address		0..1	<a href="#">Address</a>
	gender		0..1	<a href="#">code</a>
	organization		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>
	period		0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>
	communication		0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
	communication.language		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	communication.preferred		0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>
	generalPractitioner		0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner   Organization as Base Organization)</a>
	managingOrganization		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>
	encounter		1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)</a>
	encounter-description		0..1	<a href="#">string</a>
	status		1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
	class		0..1	<a href="#">coding</a>
	type		0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	subject		1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
	period		1..1	<a href="#">Period</a>
	reason		0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	date		1..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>
	author		1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
	identifier		1..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
	active		0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>
	name		0..*	<a href="#">HumanName</a>
	telecom		0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>
	address		0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>
	gender		0..1	<a href="#">code</a>
	birthDate		0..1	<a href="#">date</a>
	qualification		0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
	identifier		0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
	code		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	period		0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>

Name				Cardinality	Type
		issuer		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization) as Base Organization</a>
		communication		0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	title			1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
	attester (Legal Attester)			1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
		mode		1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
		time		1..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>
		party		1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner) as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
			identifier	1..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
			active	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>
			name	0..*	<a href="#">HumanName</a>
		telecom		0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>
		address		0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>
		gender		0..1	<a href="#">code</a>
		birthDate		0..1	<a href="#">date</a>
		qualification		0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
			identifier	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
			code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
			period	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>
			issuer	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization) as Base Organization)</a>
		communication		0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	custodian			1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization) as Organization with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
		identifier		1..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>
		active		0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>
		type		0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		name		0..1	<a href="#">string</a>
		alias		0..*	<a href="#">string</a>
		telecom		0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>
		address		0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>
		partOf		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization) as Base Organization)</a>
		contact		0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
		purpose		0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		name		0..1	<a href="#">HumanName</a>
		telecom		0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>
		address		0..1	<a href="#">Address</a>
	section (Event Overview)			1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
		title		1..1	<a href="#">string</a>
		code		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		text		1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>
		entry		1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Encounter) as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)</a>
			encounter-description	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>
			status	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
			class	0..1	<a href="#">coding</a>
			type	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
			subject	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient) as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
			period	1..1	<a href="#">Period</a>

Name				Cardinality	Type
			reason	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
section (Allergies)				0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
	title				1..1 <a href="#">string</a>
	code				1..1 <a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	text				1..1 <a href="#">Narrative</a>
	entry				0..* <a href="#">Reference(AllergyIntolerance as Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)</a>
		author-related-person		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson)</a>
		clinicalStatus		0..1	<a href="#">code</a>
		verificationStatus		1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
		type		0..1	<a href="#">code</a>
		code		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		patient		1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
		onset[x]		0..1	<a href="#">dateTime, Age, Period, Range</a>
		recorder		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Base Patient   Practitioner as Base Practitioner)</a>
		note		0..*	<a href="#">Annotation</a>
		reaction		0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
			substance	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
			manifestation	1..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	emptyReason				0..1 <a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
section (Medications)				0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
	title				1..1 <a href="#">string</a>
	code				1..1 <a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	text				1..1 <a href="#">Narrative</a>
	entry				0..1 <a href="#">Reference(List as List of Medicine Changes from an Event)</a>
		status		1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
		code		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		subject		1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
		date		0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>
		source		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
		entry		1..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
			change-description	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>
			flag	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
			item	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(MedicationStatement as Summary Statement of Known Medicine)</a>
	entry				0..1 <a href="#">Reference(Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a>
		status		1..1	<a href="#">code</a>
		code		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
		subject		1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>
		effective[x]		0..1	<a href="#">dateTime   Period</a>
		performer		0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner)   Organization as Base Organization   RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson)   Patient as Base Patient)</a>
		value[x]		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	emptyReason				0..1 <a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
section (Medical History)				0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>
	title				1..1 <a href="#">string</a>

Name			Cardinality	Type	
	code		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
	text		1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>	
	entry		0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Condition as Summary Statement of Condition)</a>	
		recorder	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner)   (Patient as Base Patient)   (RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson)</a>	
		clinicalStatus	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	
		verificationStatus	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	
		code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
		subject	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	
		onset[x]	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime, Age, Period, Range</a>	
		abatement[x]	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime, Age, boolean, Period, Range</a>	
		note	0..*	<a href="#">Annotation</a>	
	entry		0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Procedure as Summary Statement of Known Procedure)</a>	
		status	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	
		code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
		subject	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	
		performed[x]	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime, Period</a>	
		note	0..*	<a href="#">Annotation</a>	
	entry		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a>	
		status	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	
		code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
		subject	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	
		effective[x]	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime   Period</a>	
		performer	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner)   Organization as Base Organization)   RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson)   Patient as Base Patient)</a>	
		value[x]	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
	emptyReason		0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
section (Immunisations)			0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	
	title		1..1	<a href="#">string</a>	
	code		1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
	text		1..1	<a href="#">Narrative</a>	
	entry		0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Immunization as Summary Statement of Vaccine)</a>	
		status	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	
		notGiven	1..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	
		vaccineCode	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
		patient	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	
		date	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>	
		primarySource	1..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	
		vaccinationProtocol	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	
			doseSequence	0..1	<a href="#">positiveInt</a>
			doseStatus	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
	entry		0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a>	
		status	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	
		code	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	
		subject	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	
		effective[x]	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime   Period</a>	

Name				Cardinality	Type
			performer	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner)   Organization as Base Organization   RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson)   Patient as Base Patient)</a>
			value[x]	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>
			emptyReason	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>

DRAFT

# 5 CDA Header templates

This chapter contains the CDA Header requirements for this implementation guide; these are infrastructure or control requirements that are not sourced from the Event Summary model.

All the definitions in this chapter are sourced from HL7 Clinical Document Architecture, Release 2 [\[HL7CDAR2\]](#).

## 5.1 ClinicalDocument

### CDA mapping

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /	
ClinicalDocument	The ClinicalDocument class is the entry point into the CDA R-MIM, and corresponds to the <ClinicalDocument> XML element that is the root element of a CDA document.	1..1	<p>This template <b>SHALL</b> be a closed template.</p> <p>All attributes of the ClinicalDocument element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.</p> <p>The CDA document <b>SHALL</b> be valid against the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema after any additional extensions not in the Australian Digital Health Agency extension namespace have been removed.</p>
ClinicalDocument/realmCode	A realmCode signals the imposition of realm-specific constraints. The value identifies the realm in question.	0..*	All attributes of the //realmCode element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/typeId	A technology-neutral explicit reference to the CDA Release 2 specification.	1..1	
ClinicalDocument/typeId/@extension="POCD_HD000040"		1..1	The unique identifier for the CDA Release 2 Hierarchical Description.
ClinicalDocument/typeId/@root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3"		1..1	The OID for HL7 Registered models.
ClinicalDocument/id	Represents the unique instance identifier of a clinical document.	1..1	<p>All attributes of the //id element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor <b>SHALL NOT</b> be present.</p> <p>See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.</p>
ClinicalDocument/effectiveTime	Signifies the document creation time, when the document first came into being. Where the CDA document is a transform from an original document in some other format, the ClinicalDocument.effectiveTime is the time the original document is created.	1..1	<p>All attributes of the //effectiveTime element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor <b>SHALL NOT</b> be present.</p> <p>See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes.</p>
ClinicalDocument/confidentialityCode/@nullFlavor="NA"	Codes that identify how sensitive a piece of information is and/or that indicate how the information may be made available or disclosed.	1..1	

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
ClinicalDocument/ <b>setId</b>	Represents an identifier that is common across all document revisions.	0..1	All attributes of the //setId element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.  See < <a href="#">id</a> > for available attributes.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>versionNumber</b>	An integer value used to version successive replacement documents.	0..1	
ClinicalDocument/versionNumber/@value		1..1	
ClinicalDocument/ <b>ext:completionCode</b>	The lifecycle status of a document.	1..1	All attributes of the //completionCode element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed with the exception that @nullFlavor <b>SHALL NOT</b> be present.  See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes.  <a href="#">Australian Healthcare Clinical Document Architecture Document Lifecycle Status (required)</a>
ClinicalDocument/ <b>recordTarget</b>	Represents the medical record that this document belongs to.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the //recordTarget element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>author</b>	Represents the humans and/or machines that authored the document.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the //author element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>dataEnterer</b>	Represents the participant who has transformed a dictated note into text.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the //dataEnterer element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>informant</b>	Represents an informant (or source of information) who provides relevant information, such as the parent of a comatose patient who describes the patient's behavior prior to the onset of coma. Unless otherwise stated, the patient is implicitly the informant.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //informant element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>custodian</b>	Represents the organization from which the document originates and that is in charge of maintaining the document. The custodian is the steward that is entrusted with the care of the document. Every CDA document has exactly one custodian.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the //custodian element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>informationRecipient</b>	Represents a recipient who should receive a copy of the document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //informationRecipient element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>legalAuthenticator</b>	Represents a participant who has legally authenticated the document.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the //legalAuthenticator element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>authenticator</b>	Represents a participant who has attested to the accuracy of the document, but who does not have privileges to legally authenticate the document. An example would be a resident physician who sees a patient and dictates a note, then later signs it.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //authenticator element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>participant</b>	Represents a participant not explicitly mentioned by other classes that was somehow involved.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //participant element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>inFulfillmentOf</b>	Relates the current document to an order this document fulfills (in whole or in part).	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //inFulfillmentOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>documentationOf</b>	Relates the current document to the related event that this document is documentation of.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //documentationOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>relatedDocument</b>	Relates the current document to a parent document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //relatedDocument element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/ <b>authorization</b>	Relates the current document to consents associated with this document. The consent authorizes or certifies acts specified in the current document.	0..*	All attributes and elements of the //authorization element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
ClinicalDocument/componentOf	Relates the current document to the encounter. The current document is a documentation of events that occurred during the encounter.	0..1	All attributes and elements of the //componentOf element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.
ClinicalDocument/component	Relates the associated document body as a component of the document.	1..1	All attributes and elements of the //component element defined by the Australian Digital Health Agency CDA schema <b>SHALL</b> be allowed.

## 5.2 LegalAuthenticator

### CDA mapping

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>			Context: /ClinicalDocument/
legalAuthenticator/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100012"		1..1	
legalAuthenticator/templateId/@extension="1.0"		1..1	
legalAuthenticator/time/@value	Indicates the time of authentication.	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/signatureCode/@code="S"	Indicates that the signature has been affixed and is on file.	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity	A legalAuthenticator is a person in the role of an assigned entity (AssignedEntity class). An assigned entity is a person assigned to the role by the scoping organization. The entity playing the role is a person (Person class). The entity scoping the role is an organization (Organization class).	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/code	The specific kind of role.	0..1	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes.
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/id	A unique identifier for the player entity in this role.	1..1	See < <a href="#">id</a> > for available attributes.
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/assignedPerson	The entity playing the role (assignedEntity) is a person.	1..1	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	The entity identifier of the person.	0..*	See < <a href="#">Entity Identifier</a> > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/addr	A postal address for the entity (assignedPerson) while in the role (assignedEntity).	0..*	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a> .
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/telecom	A telecommunication address for the entity (assignedPerson) while in the role (assignedEntity).	0..*	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name	A non-unique textual identifier or moniker for the entity (assignedPerson).	0..*	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">HumanName</a> .
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/representedOrganization	The entity scoping the role (assignedEntity).	0..1	
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier	A unique identifier for the scoping entity (represented organization) in this role (assignedEntity).	0..*	See < <a href="#">Entity Identifier</a> > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
legalAuthenticator/assignedEntity/representedOrganization/name	A non-unique textual identifier or moniker for the entity (representedOrganization).	0..*	

## 5.3 Administrative Observations

### CDA mapping

CDA schema element	Definition	Card	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements	Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/		
component[admin_obs]	The ES document model contains a number of elements for which there are no equivalent elements at that point in the hierarchical structure of the model mapped into CDA. These elements are considered to be "Administrative Observations" about the encounter, the patient or some other participant.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	ClinicalDocument <b>SHALL</b> contain at most one Administrative Observation section.  The Administrative Observations section <b>SHALL NOT</b> be populated if there are no entries or text to go in it.
component[admin_obs]/section		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/templateId		1..1	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
component[admin_obs]/section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000"		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/templateId/@extension="1.0"		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/id		0..1	See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
component[admin_obs]/section/code		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/code/@code="102.16080"		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"		1..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/code/@codeSystemName		0..1	Optional CDA element.  The value <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
component[admin_obs]/section/code/@displayName		0..1	Optional CDA element.  The value <b>SHOULD</b> be "Administrative Observations".
component[admin_obs]/section/title="Administrative Observations"		0..1	
component[admin_obs]/section/text		0..1	See <a href="#">CDA narratives</a> .



# 6 Document CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the Composition (Event Summary) model to a CDA clinical document class, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how the CDA document is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary Hierarchy.

## 6.1 ClinicalDocument (Event Summary)

The following are the usage scenarios expected:

- A clinical information system (CIS) sends or receives a Event Summary with the My Health Record system
- A contracted service provider (CSP) sends or receives a Event Summary with the My Health Record system
- A CIS sends or receives an Event Summary with another CIS or CSP
- A CSP sends or receives an Event Summary with a CIS or another CSP
- A registered portal or registered repository receives an Event Summary

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Context: /					
Composition	A clinical document written by the nominated provider, which contains key pieces of information about an individual's health status and is useful to a wide range of providers in assessing individuals and delivering care.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<a href="#">ClinicalDocument</a>	In addition to the template defined in this mapping table, ClinicalDocument <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">ClinicalDocument</a> .
				<a href="#">ClinicalDocument/templateId</a>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<a href="#">ClinicalDocument/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020"</a>	
				<a href="#">ClinicalDocument/templateId/@extension="1.0"</a>	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Composition > <b>composition-author-role</b>	A practitioner role that authored this composition. This is not to be confused with who typed in the information.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(PractitionerRole)</a> as PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier	ClinicalDocument/author	author SHALL conform to the template defined in <a href="#">author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a> .
Composition > <b>identifier</b>	Logical identifier for the composition, assigned when created. This identifier stays constant as the composition is changed over time.	0..1	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	ClinicalDocument/setId	
Composition > <b>status</b>	The workflow/clinical status of this composition. The status is a marker for the clinical standing of the document.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	ClinicalDocument/ext:completionCode	<a href="#">Australian Healthcare Clinical Document Architecture Document Lifecycle Status (required)</a> <sup>1</sup>
Composition > <b>type</b>	Specifies the particular kind of composition (e.g. History and Physical, Discharge Summary, Progress Note). This usually equates to the purpose of making the composition.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	ClinicalDocument/code	
				ClinicalDocument/code/@code="34133-9"	
				ClinicalDocument/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				ClinicalDocument/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName SHOULD be "LOINC".
				ClinicalDocument/code/@displayName	displayName SHOULD be "Summary of episode note".
Composition > <b>subject</b>	Who or what the composition is about. The composition can be about a person, (patient or healthcare practitioner), a device (e.g. a machine) or even a group of subjects (such as a document about a herd of livestock, or a set of patients that share a common exposure).	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient)</a> as Patient with Mandatory Identifier	ClinicalDocument/recordTarget	recordTarget SHALL conform to the template defined in <a href="#">recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a> .
Composition > <b>encounter</b>	Describes the clinical encounter or type of care this documentation is associated with.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Encounter)</a> as Summary of an Encounter for an Event	ClinicalDocument/componentOf[enc]	encompassingEncounter SHALL conform to the template defined in <a href="#">encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)</a> .
				ClinicalDocument/componentOf[enc]/encompassingEncounter	
Composition > <b>date</b>	The composition editing time, when the composition was last logically changed by the author.	1..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>	ClinicalDocument/author/time	
Composition > <b>author</b>	Identifies who is responsible for the information in the composition, not necessarily who typed it in.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner)</a> as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier	ClinicalDocument/author	In CDA an author (Practitioner) is part of composition-author-role (PractitionerRole).  author SHALL conform to the template defined in <a href="#">author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a> .
Composition > <b>title</b>	Official human-readable label for the composition.	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>	ClinicalDocument/title	
Composition > <b>attester (Legal Attester)</b>	A participant who has attested to the accuracy of the composition/document.	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	ClinicalDocument/legalAuthenticator	legalAuthenticator SHALL conform to the template defined in <a href="#">LegalAuthenticator</a> .
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > <b>mode</b>	The type of attestation the authenticator offers.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	n/a	attester.mode="legal"; the person authenticated the content and accepted legal responsibility for its content.
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > <b>time</b>	When the composition was attested by the party.	1..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>	n/a	Not mapped separately, implicit in legalAuthenticator/time/@value.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Composition > attester (Legal Attester) > <b>party</b>	Who attested the composition in the specified way.	1..1	<a href="#">ReferencePractitioner</a> as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier	n/a	Not mapped separately, implicit in legalAuthenticator/as-signedEntity.
Composition > <b>custodian</b>	Identifies the organization or group who is responsible for ongoing maintenance of and access to the composition/document information.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization</a> as Organization with Mandatory Identifier)	ClinicalDocument/custodian	custodian <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier)</a> .
Composition > <b>section (Event Overview)</b>	Summary information concerning the event.	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[event] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[event]/section	section <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">section (Event Overview)</a> .
Composition > <b>section (Allergies)</b>	Information about allergies or intolerances identified or reported during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies.	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[allergy]/section	section <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">section (Allergies)</a> .
Composition > <b>section (Medications)</b>	Information about medicines that are relevant to the encounter. The medicines included do not constitute a full medications list, but are those medicines that have specifically changed as a result of the encounter, or those medicines directly relevant to the encounter.	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[meds] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[meds]/section	section <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">section (Medications)</a> .
Composition > <b>section (Medical History)</b>	Information about the problems, diagnoses and medical or surgical procedures of a patient. This can include statements that a patient does not have a particular condition.	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[med_hist] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[med_hist]/section	section <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">section (Medical History)</a> .
Composition > <b>section (Immunisations)</b>	Information about vaccinations administered or reported to be administered during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient has not had a particular vaccine administered.	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[imms] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[imms]/section	section <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">section (Immunisations)</a> .
Composition > <b>section (Diagnostic Investigations)</b>	Information about diagnostic tests or procedures performed on or requested for an individual during this encounter, that are considered relevant to the individual's ongoing care. This does not include a full list of diagnostic tests and procedures performed on or request for the individual but only those that are relevant to the encounter.	0..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[diag_inv] ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[diag_inv]/section	section <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">section (Diagnostic Investigations)</a> .

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology binding on status in Event Summary [\[DH2019g\]](#) and in the CDA model are defined in [Composition Status FHIR to Australian CDA Document Lifecycle Status](#) concept map.



# 7 Participation CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the Individual (e.g. Patient with Mandatory Identifier) and Entity (e.g. Organization with Mandatory Identifier) models to CDA participation classes, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how each CDA participation is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary Hierarchy.

## 7.1 recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<code>recordTarget[pat]</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/templateId</code>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100004"</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/templateId/@extension="1.0"</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/id</code>	See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient</code>	
Patient > <b>birthPlace</b>	The registered place of birth of the patient. A system may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	<a href="#">Address</a>	<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/birthplace</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/birthplace/place</code>	
				<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/birthplace/place/addr</code>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Patient > <b>indigenous-status</b>	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	<a href="#">Coding</a>	<code>recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ethnicGroupCode</code>	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">Australian Indigenous Status (required)</a>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					
Patient > closing-the-gap-registration	Closing the Gap registration indicator for an Australian patient.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	entry[close_gap] entry[close_gap]/observation entry[close_gap]/observation/@classCode="OBS" entry[close_gap]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" entry[close_gap]/observation/id entry[close_gap]/observation/code entry[close_gap]/observation/code/@code="103.32011" entry[close_gap]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" entry[close_gap]/observation/code/@codeSystemName entry[close_gap]/observation/code/@displayName entry[close_gap]/observation/value	Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component@admin_obs]/section/ See <a href="#">Administrative Observations</a> . Optional CDA element. See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Closing the Gap Copayment Eligibility Indicator". The value is 'true' if eligible for Closing the Gap co-payment. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "BL".
Patient > patient-mothersMaidenName	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	entry[mothers_name] entry[mothers_name]/observation entry[mothers_name]/observation/@classCode="OBS" entry[mothers_name]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" entry[mothers_name]/observation/id entry[mothers_name]/observation/code entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/@code="103.10245" entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/@codeSystemName entry[mothers_name]/observation/code/@displayName entry[mothers_name]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Mother's Original Family Name". //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "ST".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Patient > <b>identifier</b>	An identifier for this patient.	1..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <a href="#">&lt;Entity Identifier&gt;</a> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
Patient > <b>active</b>	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > <b>name</b>	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	<a href="#">HumanName</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">HumanName</a> .
Patient > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
Patient > <b>gender</b>	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/administrativeGenderCode	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">AdministrativeGender (required)</a>
Patient > <b>birthDate</b>	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	<a href="#">date</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/birthTime	See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes.
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>		Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ See <a href="#">Administrative Observations</a> .			
Patient > birthDate > <b>date-accuracy-indicator</b>	General date accuracy indicator coding.	0..1	<a href="#">Coding</a>	entry[dob_acc]	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/id	Optional CDA element. See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/@code="102.16234"	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Date of Birth Accuracy Indicator".
				entry[dob_acc]/observation/value	//value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CS". <a href="#">Date Accuracy Indicator (required)</a>
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Patient > birthDate > <b>patient-birthTime</b>	The time of day that the Patient was born. This includes the date to ensure that the timezone information can be communicated effectively.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>	n/a	Not mapped separately, encompassed in patientRole/patient/birthTime.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Patient > deceased	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a> <a href="#">dateTime</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedInd	Only one of patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedInd or patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedTime <b>SHOULD</b> be instantiated.
				recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:deceasedTime	
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ See <a href="#">Administrative Observations</a>
Patient > deceased > date-accuracy-indicator	General date accuracy indicator coding.	0..1	<a href="#">Coding</a>	entry[dod_acc]	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/id	Optional CDA element. See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/@code="102.16252"	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Date of Death Accuracy Indicator".
				entry[dod_acc]/observation/value	//value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CS". <a href="#">Date Accuracy Indicator (required)</a>
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					Context: /ClinicalDocument/
Patient > address	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a> .
Patient > maritalStatus	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/maritalStatusCode	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">Marital Status Codes (extensible)</a>
Patient > multipleBirth	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a> <a href="#">integer</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthInd	Only one of patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthInd or patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthOrderNumber <b>SHOULD</b> be instantiated.
Patient > contact	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*		recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/ext:multipleBirthOrderNumber	
Patient > communication	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	participant[pat_contact]	participant[pat_contact] <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">participant (Patient contact)</a> .
				recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Patient > communication > <b>language</b>	The ISO-639-1 alpha 2 code in lower case for the language, optionally followed by a hyphen and the ISO-3166-1 alpha 2 code for the region in upper case; e.g. 'en' for English, or 'en-US' for American English versus 'en-EN' for England English.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication/languageCode	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes. <a href="#">Common Languages in Australia (extensible)</a>
Patient > communication > <b>preferred</b>	Indicates whether or not the patient prefers this language (over other languages he masters up a certain level).	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/patient/languageCommunication/preferenceInd	
Patient > <b>generalPractitioner</b>	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(<a href="#">Organization</a> as Base Organization <a href="#">Practitioner</a> as Base Practitioner)</a>	<b>participant</b>	participant <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization)</a> or <a href="#">participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner)</a> .
Patient > <b>managingOrganization</b>	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(<a href="#">Organization</a> as Base Organization)</a>	recordTarget[pat]/patientRole/providerOrganization[manag_org]	providerOrganization <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">providerOrganization (Base Organization)</a> .

## 7.2 participant (Patient contact)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					
Patient > <b>contact</b>	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
				<b>participant[pat_contact]</b>	contact <b>SHALL</b> have at least name, or telecom, or address, or organization instantiated.
				<b>participant[pat_contact]/@typeCode="IND"</b>	
				<b>participant[pat_contact]/templateId</b>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<b>participant[pat_contact]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100056"</b>	
				<b>participant[pat_contact]/templateId/@extension="1.0"</b>	
				<b>participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity</b>	
				<b>participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/@typeCode="CON"</b>	
Patient > contact > <b>relationship</b>	The nature of the relationship between the patient and the contact person.	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship	<a href="#">ContactEntityType (extensible)</a> See <Personal Relationship> for available attributes.
Patient > contact > <b>name</b>	A name associated with the contact person.	0..1	<a href="#">HumanName</a>	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ <b>name</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">HumanName</a> .
Patient > contact > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/ <b>telecom</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
Patient > contact > <b>address</b>	Address for the contact person.	0..1	<a href="#">Address</a>	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/ <b>addr</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Patient > contact > <b>gender</b>	Administrative Gender - the gender that the contact person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:administrativeGenderCode	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes. <a href="#">AdministrativeGender (required)</a>
Patient > contact > <b>organization</b>	Organization on behalf of which the contact is acting or for which the contact is working.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>	participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization participant[pat_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/typeCode="ORG"	contact > organization template is not currently defined.
Patient > contact > <b>period</b>	The period during which this contact person or organization is valid to be contacted relating to this patient.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

## 7.3 participant (generalPractitioner Base Organization)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					Context: /ClinicalDocument/
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	participant[gen_prac_org]	The organization <b>SHALL</b> at least have an identifier (participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier) or a name (participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/name).
				participant[gen_prac_org]/@typeCode="PART"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[gen_prac_org]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100036"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/functionCode/@code="PCP"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/@classCode="PROV"	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/id	Optional CDA element.  See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
Organization > <b>identifier</b>	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <a href="#">&lt;Entity Identifier&gt;</a> for available attributes.  Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
Organization > <b>active</b>	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > <b>type</b>	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/code	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes.  <a href="#">OrganizationType (example)</a>
Organization > <b>name</b>	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //scopingOrganization/name.
Organization > <b>alias</b>	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //scopingOrganization/name.
Organization > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/telecom	telecom/@use is <a href="#">Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> .  Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Organization > <b>address</b>	An address for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/addr	addr/@use is <a href="#">Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Organization > <b>partOf</b>	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>	participant[gen_prac_org]/asOrganizationPartOf participant[gen_prac_org]/asOrganizationPartOf/wholeOrganization	The organization <b>SHALL</b> have at least a name (/wholeOrganization/name) or an identifier (/wholeOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier). Organization > partOf template is not currently defined.
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					Context: /ClinicalDocument/
Organization > <b>contact</b>	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	<a href="#">participant[org_contact]</a>	participant[org_contact] <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">participant (Organization contact)</a> .

## 7.4 participant (generalPractitioner Base Practitioner)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	participant[gen_prac_prac]	The practitioner <b>SHALL</b> at least have an identifier (participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier) or a name (participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name).
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/@typeCode="PART"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/functionCode/@code="PCP"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity	
				participant[gen_prac_org]/associatedEntity/@classCode="PROV"	
				participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/id	Optional CDA element. See < <a href="#">id</a> > for available attributes.
Practitioner > <a href="#">identifier</a>	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See < <a href="#">Entity Identifier</a> > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
Practitioner > <a href="#">active</a>	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > <a href="#">name</a>	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	<a href="#">HumanName</a>	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">HumanName</a> .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
Practitioner > <b>address</b>	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Practitioner > <b>gender</b>	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:administrativeGenderCode	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">AdministrativeGender (required)</a>
Practitioner > <b>birthDate</b>	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	<a href="#">date</a>	participant[gen_prac_prac]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/ext:birthTime	
Practitioner > <b>qualification</b>	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p>It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list.</p> <p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then this element is expected to be as //ext:Qualifications/@classCode="QUAL". See <a href="#">&lt;Qualification&gt;</a> for available attributes.</p> <p>If more information can be captured than a narrative list then this logical element is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification)</a>.</p>
Practitioner > <b>communication</b>	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	<p>This logical element is not currently mapped into CDA.</p> <p>This may be supported in future by an entry in Administrative Observations or by the addition of an extension to add the languageCommunication element to the Person class.</p>

## 7.5 author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
<b>PractitionerRole</b>	A specific set of Roles/Locations/specialties/services that a practitioner may perform at an organization for a period of time.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<b>author[prac_rol]</b>	
				<b>author[prac_rol]/templateId</b>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<b>author[prac_rol]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006"</b>	
				<b>author[prac_rol]/templateId/@extension="1.0"</b>	
				<b>author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor</b>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<b>author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/id</b>	
<b>PractitionerRole &gt; identifier</b>	Business identifiers for practitioner in a role.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	<b>author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier</b>	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					Cardinality of this element <b>SHALL</b> be interpreted as 1..*. See <a href="#">Entity Identifier</a> for available attributes.
<b>PractitionerRole &gt; active</b>	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					Cardinality of this element <b>SHALL</b> be interpreted as 1..*. See <a href="#">Entity Identifier</a> for available attributes.
<b>Practitioner &gt; period</b>	The period during which the person is authorized to act as a practitioner in these role(s) for the organization.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	n/a	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					Cardinality of this element <b>SHALL</b> be interpreted as 1..*. See <a href="#">Entity Identifier</a> for available attributes.
<b>PractitionerRole &gt; practitioner</b>	Practitioner that is able to provide the defined services for the organization.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<b>author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/assignedPerson</b>	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					assignedPerson <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">assignedPerson ()</a> .
<b>PractitionerRole &gt; organization</b>	The organization where the Practitioner performs the roles associated.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>	<b>author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/representedOrganization</b>	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					representedOrganization <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">representedOrganization (Base Organization)</a> .
<b>PractitionerRole &gt; code</b>	Roles which this practitioner is authorized to perform for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">code</a>	<b>author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/code</b>	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					See <a href="#">code</a> for available attributes.
<b>PractitionerRole &gt; specialty</b>	Specific specialty of the practitioner.	0..*	<a href="#">code</a>	n/a	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					specialty is not currently mapped.
<b>PractitionerRole &gt; location</b>	The location(s) at which this practitioner provides care.	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Location)</a>	n/a	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					location is not currently mapped.
<b>PractitionerRole &gt; healthcareService</b>	The list of healthcare services that this worker provides for this role's Organization/Location(s).	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(HealthcareService)</a>	n/a	In CDA the identifier for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier.
					healthcareService is not currently mapped.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
PractitionerRole > <b>telecom</b>	Contact details that are specific to the role/location/service.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	author[prac_rol]/assignedAuthor/telecom	In CDA the telecom for both PractitionerRole and Practitioner for an author participation are expected to be included in //assignedAuthor/telecom.  Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
PractitionerRole > <b>availableTime</b>	A collection of times that the Service Site is available.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	n/a	availableTime is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > <b>notAvailable</b>	The HealthcareService is not available during this period of time due to the provided reason.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	n/a	notAvailable is not currently mapped.
PractitionerRole > <b>availabilityExceptions</b>	A description of site availability exceptions, e.g. public holiday availability. Succinctly describing all possible exceptions to normal site availability as details in the available Times and not available Times.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	availabilityExceptions is not currently mapped.

<sup>1</sup>Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on code in PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

## 7.6 custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
<b>Organization</b>	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<b>custodian[org]</b>	
				<b>custodian[org]/templateId</b>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<b>custodian[org]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002"</b>	
				<b>custodian[org]/templateId/@extension="1.0"</b>	
				<b>custodian[org]/assignedCustodian</b>	
				<b>custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization</b>	
				<b>custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/id</b>	Optional CDA element.  See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
Organization > <b>identifier</b>	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	1..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <a href="#">&lt;Entity Identifier&gt;</a> for available attributes.  Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
Organization > <b>active</b>	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > <b>type</b>	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > <b>name</b>	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/ <b>name</b>	In CDA name and alias are represented by //represented-CustodianOrganization/name.
Organization > <b>alias</b>	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/ <b>telecom</b>	In CDA the maximum occurrences of representedCustodianOrganization/telecom is 1. Although the model indicates that telecom is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1.  telecom/@use is <a href="#">Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> .  Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Organization > <b>address</b>	An address for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	custodian[org]/assignedCustodian/representedCustodianOrganization/addr	addr/@use is <a href="#">Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> . In CDA the maximum occurrences of representedCustodianOrganization/addr is 1. Although the model indicates that address is 0..*, in a CDA implementation this is limited to 0..1. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Organization > <b>partOf</b>	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					Context: /ClinicalDocument/
Organization > <b>contact</b>	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	participant[org_contact]	participant[org_contact] SHALL conform to the template defined in <a href="#">participant (Organization contact)</a> .

## 7.7 informant (Base Patient)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>				Context: Comes from linking element	
Patient	Demographics and other administrative information about an individual receiving care or other health-related services.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<b>informant[pat]</b>	The patient <b>SHALL</b> have at least a name ( <b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name</b> ) or an identifier ( <b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier</b> ).
				<b>informant[pat]/templateId</b>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<b>informant[pat]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100051"</b>	
				<b>informant[pat]/templateId/@extension="1.0"</b>	
				<b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity</b>	
				<b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/id</b>	This <b>SHALL</b> hold the same value as <b>/ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole/id</b> .
				<b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/code</b>	Optional CDA element.
				<b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/code/@code="ONESELF"</b>	
				<b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111"</b>	
				<b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson</b>	
Patient > <b>birthPlace</b>	The registered place of birth of the patient. A system may use the address.text if they don't store the birthPlace address in discrete elements.	0..1	<a href="#">Address</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in <b>//patient/birthplace/place/addr</b> .
Patient > <b>indigenous-status</b>	National Health Data Dictionary (NHDD) based indigenous status for a patient.	0..1	<a href="#">Coding</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in <b>//patient/ethnicGroupCode</b> .
Patient > <b>closing-the-gap-registration</b>	Closing the Gap registration indicator for an Australian patient.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	closing-the-gap-registration is not currently mapped.
Patient > <b>patient-mothersMaidenName</b>	Mother's maiden (unmarried) name, commonly collected to help verify patient identity.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in <b>//entry[mothers_name]/observation/value</b> .
Patient > <b>identifier</b>	An identifier for this patient.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	<b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier</b>	See <a href="#">&lt;Entity Identifier&gt;</a> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
Patient > <b>active</b>	Whether this patient record is in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > <b>name</b>	A name associated with the individual.	0..*	<a href="#">HumanName</a>	<b>informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">HumanName</a> .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Patient > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the individual may be contacted.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	informant[pat]/assignedEntity/telecom	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
Patient > <b>gender</b>	Administrative Gender - the gender that the patient is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	informant[pat]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:administrativeGenderCode	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">AdministrativeGender (required)</a>
Patient > <b>birthDate</b>	The date of birth for the individual.	0..1	<a href="#">date</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/birthTime.
Patient > <b>deceased</b>	Indicates if the individual is deceased or not. Deceased date accuracy indicator is optional.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a> <a href="#">dateTime</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/ext:deceasedTime or //patient/ext:deceasedInd.
Patient > <b>address</b>	Addresses for the individual.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	informant[pat]/assignedEntity/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Patient > <b>maritalStatus</b>	This field contains a patient's most recent marital (civil) status.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/maritalStatusCode.
Patient > <b>multipleBirth</b>	Indicates whether the patient is part of a multiple (bool) or indicates the actual birth order (integer).	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a> <a href="#">integer</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/ext:multipleBirthInd or //patient/multiple-BirthOrderNumber.
Patient > <b>contact</b>	A contact party (e.g. guardian, partner, friend) for the patient.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > <b>communication</b>	Languages which may be used to communicate with the patient about his or her health.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient/languageCommunication.
Patient > <b>generalPractitioner</b>	Patient's nominated care provider.	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization   Practitioner as Base Practitioner)</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Patient > <b>managingOrganization</b>	Organization that is the custodian of the patient record.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

## 7.8 informant (Base RelatedPerson)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
<b>RelatedPerson</b>  Information about a person that is involved in the care for a patient, but who is not the target of healthcare, nor has a formal responsibility in the care process.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>		<b>informant[rel_per]</b>	The related person <b>SHALL</b> have at least a name ( <b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/name</b> ), or an identifier ( <b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier</b> ), or a relationship ( <b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship</b> ).
				<b>informant[rel_per]/templateId</b>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<b>informant[rel_per]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100052"</b>	
				<b>informant[rel_per]/templateId/@extension="1.0"</b>	
				<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity</b>	
				<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/@classCode="PRS"</b>	
				<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/code</b>	Optional CDA element.
<b>RelatedPerson &gt; identifier</b>	Identifier for a person within a particular scope.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier</b>	See <a href="#">&lt;Entity Identifier&gt;</a> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
					This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
<b>RelatedPerson &gt; active</b>	Whether this related person record is in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this participant; this is implicit in //patient.
<b>RelatedPerson &gt; patient</b>	The patient this person is related to.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Base Patient)</a>	n/a	
<b>RelatedPerson &gt; relationship</b>	The nature of the relationship between a patient and the related person.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship</b>	<a href="#">Related Person Relationship Type (extensible)</a> See <a href="#">&lt;Personal Relationship&gt;</a> for available attributes.
<b>RelatedPerson &gt; name</b>	A name associated with the person.	0..*	<a href="#">HumanName</a>	<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/name</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Human-Name</a> .
<b>RelatedPerson &gt; telecom</b>	A contact detail for the person, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/telecom</b>	
<b>RelatedPerson &gt; gender</b>	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:administrativeGenderCode</b>	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">AdministrativeGender (required)</a>
<b>RelatedPerson &gt; birthDate</b>	The date on which the related person was born.	0..1	<a href="#">date</a>	<b>informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:birthTime</b>	See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
RelatedPerson > <b>address</b>	Address where the related person can be contacted or visited.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/ <b>addr</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
RelatedPerson > <b>period</b>	The period of time that this relationship is considered to be valid. If there are no dates defined, then the interval is unknown.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	informant[rel_per]/relatedEntity/relatedPerson/ext:personalRelationship[related]/ext:effectiveTime	See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes.

## 7.9 informant (Base Practitioner)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Practitioner	A person who is directly or indirectly involved in the provisioning of healthcare.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<b>informant[prac]</b>	The practitioner <b>SHALL</b> at least have an identifier ( <b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier</b> ) or a name ( <b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name</b> ).
				<b>informant[prac]/templateId</b>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<b>informant[prac]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100053"</b>	
				<b>informant[prac]/templateId/@extension="1.0"</b>	
				<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity</b>	
				<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/id</b>	See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
				<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/code</b>	Optional CDA element. See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes.
				<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson</b>	<a href="#">Australian and New Zealand Standard Classification of Occupations (preferred)</a>
Practitioner > <b>identifier</b>	An identifier that applies to this person in this role.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:asEntityIdentifier</b>	See <a href="#">&lt;Entity Identifier&gt;</a> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
Practitioner > <b>active</b>	Whether this practitioner's record is in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Practitioner > <b>name</b>	The name(s) associated with the practitioner.	0..*	<a href="#">HumanName</a>	<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/name</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">HumanName</a> .
Practitioner > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail for the practitioner, e.g. a telephone number or an email address.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/telecom</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
Practitioner > <b>address</b>	Address(es) of the practitioner that are not role specific (typically home address). Work addresses are not typically entered in this property as they are usually role dependent.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/addr</b>	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Practitioner > <b>gender</b>	Administrative Gender - the gender that the person is considered to have for administration and record keeping purposes.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:administrativeGenderCode</b>	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">AdministrativeGender (required)</a>
Practitioner > <b>birthDate</b>	The date of birth for the practitioner.	0..1	<a href="#">date</a>	<b>informant[prac]/assignedEntity/assignedPerson/ext:birthTime</b>	See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > <b>qualification</b>	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p>It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list.</p> <p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then this element is expected to be as //ext:Qualifications/@classCode="QUAL". See &lt;<a href="#">Qualification</a>&gt; for available attributes.</p> <p>If more information can be captured than a narrative list then this logical element is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification)</a>.</p>
Practitioner > <b>communication</b>	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	<p>This logical element is not currently mapped into CDA.</p> <p>This may be supported in future by an entry in Administrative Observations or by the addition of an extension to add the languageCommunication element to the Person class.</p>

# 8 Entity CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the Individual (e.g. Patient with Mandatory Identifier) and Entity (e.g. Organization with Mandatory Identifier) models to CDA entity classes, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how each CDA entity is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary Hierarchy.

## 8.1 providerOrganization (Base Organization)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Comes from linking elements			
Organization	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	providerOrganization[manag_org]	The organization <b>SHALL</b> at least have an identifier (providerOrganization[manag_org]/ext:asEntityIdentifier) or a name (providerOrganization[manag_org]/name).
				providerOrganization[manag_org]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				providerOrganization[manag_org]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100034"	
				providerOrganization[manag_org]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				providerOrganization[manag_org]/id	Optional CDA element. See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
Organization > <b>identifier</b>	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	providerOrganization[manag_org]/ext:asEntityIdentifier	See <a href="#">&lt;Entity Identifier&gt;</a> for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
Organization > <b>active</b>	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > <b>type</b>	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	providerOrganization[manag_org]/standardIndustryClassCode	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">OrganizationType (example)</a>
Organization > <b>name</b>	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	providerOrganization[manag_org]/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.
Organization > <b>alias</b>	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	providerOrganization[manag_org]/name	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Organization > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	providerOrganization[manag_org]/telecom	telecom/@use is <a href="#">Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
Organization > <b>address</b>	An address for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	providerOrganization[manag_org]/addr	addr/@use is <a href="#">Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Organization > <b>partOf</b>	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>	providerOrganization[manag_org]/asOrganizationPartOf providerOrganization[manag_org]/asOrganizationPartOf/wholeOrganization	The organization <b>SHALL</b> have at least a name (//wholeOrganization/name) or an identifier (//wholeOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier). Organization > partOf template is not currently defined.
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					Context: /ClinicalDocument/
Organization > <b>contact</b>	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	<a href="#">participant[org_contact]</a>	participant[org_contact] <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">participant (Organization contact)</a> .

## 8.2 participant (Organization contact)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>				Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
Organization > <b>contact</b>	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	<b>participant[org_contact]</b>	
				participant[org_contact]/@typeCode="IND"	
				participant[org_contact]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				participant[org_contact]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100035"	
				participant[org_contact]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/@classCode="CON"	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/@classCode="ORG"	Optional CDA element.
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/scopingOrganization/id	Organization > contact is represented in CDA by a participant that is scoped by the Organization for which they are a contact.  This <b>SHALL</b> hold the same value as the organization this is a contact for (the value in this id element <b>SHALL</b> be present in a separate participation).
Organization > contact > <b>purpose</b>	Indicates a purpose for which the contact can be reached.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/code	See <a href="#">code</a> for available attributes.  <a href="#">ContactEntityType (extensible)</a>
Organization > contact > <b>name</b>	A name associated with the contact.	0..1	<a href="#">HumanName</a>	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson	
				participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/associatedPerson/name	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">HumanName</a> .
Organization > contact > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail (e.g. a telephone number or an email address) by which the party may be contacted.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/telecom	telecom/@use is <a href="#">Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> .  Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
Organization > contact > <b>address</b>	Visiting or postal addresses for the contact.	0..1	<a href="#">Address</a>	participant[org_contact]/associatedEntity/addr	Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .

## 8.3 representedOrganization (Base Organization)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Comes from linking elements			
<b>Organization</b>	A formally or informally recognized grouping of people or organizations formed for the purpose of achieving some form of collective action. Includes companies, institutions, corporations, departments, community groups, healthcare practice groups, etc.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<b>representedOrganization</b>	The organization <b>SHALL</b> have at least name (//representedOrganization/name) or an identifier (//representedOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier) instantiated.
				<b>representedOrganization/templateId</b>	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				<b>representedOrganization/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039"</b>	
				<b>representedOrganization/templateId/@extension="1.0"</b>	
				<b>representedOrganization/id</b>	See < <a href="#">id</a> > for available attributes.
Organization > <b>identifier</b>	Identifier for the organization that is used to identify the organization across multiple disparate systems.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	<b>representedOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier</b>	See < <a href="#">Entity Identifier</a> > for available attributes. Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Identifier</a> .
Organization > <b>active</b>	Whether the organization's record is still in active use.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Organization > <b>type</b>	The kind(s) of organization that this is.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	<b>representedOrganization/standardIndustryClassCode</b>	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes. <a href="#">OrganizationType (example)</a>
Organization > <b>name</b>	A name associated with the organization.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	<b>representedOrganization/name</b>	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.
Organization > <b>alias</b>	A list of alternate names that the organization is known as, or was known as in the past.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	<b>representedOrganization/name</b>	In CDA name and alias are represented by //representedOrganization/name.
Organization > <b>telecom</b>	A contact detail for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">ContactPoint</a>	<b>representedOrganization/telecom</b>	telecom/@use is <a href="#">Organization Telecom Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">ContactPoint</a> .
Organization > <b>address</b>	An address for the organization.	0..*	<a href="#">Address</a>	<b>representedOrganization/addr</b>	addr/@use is <a href="#">Organization Address Use HL7 V3 (required)</a> . Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Address</a>   <a href="#">Address as Australian Address</a> .
Organization > <b>partOf</b>	The organization of which this organization forms a part.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Organization Base)</a>	<b>representedOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf</b>	The organization <b>SHALL</b> have at least a name (//wholeOrganization/name) or an identifier (//wholeOrganization/ext:asEntityIdentifier).
				<b>representedOrganization/asOrganizationPartOf/wholeOrganization</b>	Organization > partOf template is not currently defined.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>		Context: /ClinicalDocument/			
Organization > <a href="#">contact</a>	Contact for the organization for a certain purpose.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	<b>participant[org_contact]</b>	participant[org_contact] SHALL conform to the template defined in <a href="#">participant (Organization contact)</a> .



Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > <b>qualification</b>	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p>It is possible that the qualification may be able to be captured as a complex structure or as a text list.</p> <p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If the qualification or list of qualifications is the result of capturing a text field then this element is expected to be as //assignedPerson[prac]/ext:Qualifications/@classCode="QUAL". See <a href="#">&lt;Qualification&gt;</a> for available attributes.</p> <p>If more information can be captured than a narrative list then this logical element is expected to be instantiated as ext:coverage2[prac_qual] and SHALL conform to the template defined in <a href="#">ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification)</a>.</p>
Practitioner > <b>communication</b>	A language the practitioner is able to use in patient communication.	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	<p>This logical element is not currently mapped into CDA.</p> <p>This may be supported in future by an entry in Administrative Observations or by the addition of an extension to add the languageCommunication element to the Person class.</p>



# 9 Section CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the section (e.g. Medications) models to CDA section classes, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how each CDA section is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary Hierarchy.

## 9.1 section (Event Overview)

Where an authoring system wants to include information that cannot be directly included the supported section entry the information may be included via a structure that is referenced from the supported section entry or by instantiating a child section to manage the additional information with a meaningful sub-section grouping

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements		Comes from linking elements			
section (Event Overview)	Summary information concerning the event.	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	section	This section <b>SHALL</b> contain an encounter entry (/entry[enc]/encounter) that <b>SHALL</b> contain an encounter-description (/entry[enc]/encounter/text).
				section/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
section (Event Overview) > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>	section/title	
section (Event Overview) > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/code	
				section/code/@code="101.16672"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Event Overview".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section (Event Overview) > <b>text</b>	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	<a href="#">narrative</a>	section/text	See <a href="#">CDA narratives</a> .
section (Event Overview) > <b>entry</b>	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Encounter as Summary of an Encounter for an Event)</a>	section/entry[enc]	
				section/entry[enc]/encounter	encounter <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)</a> .

## 9.2 section (Allergies)

For each section included, it is important to differentiate between affirmatively stating a patient does not have a specific condition (e.g. no latex allergy) versus not including findings in the record (e.g. not applicable or unknown):

- Where a sending system does not have any clinical data to provide in that section it is expected that emptyReason is used
- Where a sending system can state that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies it is expected that an allergy or intolerance observation is sent with the appropriate negation code (e.g. 716186003 |No known allergy|) is sent as the code

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements</b>		Context: Comes from linking elements			
section (Allergies)	Information about allergies or intolerances identified or reported during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient does not have an allergy or category of allergies.	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	section	This section <b>SHALL</b> contain at least one entry (section/entry[adv]) or an emptyReason (section/@nullFlavor) but <b>SHALL NOT</b> contain both.
				section/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
section (Allergies) > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>	section/title	
section (Allergies) > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/code	
				section/code/@code="48765-2"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "LOINC".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Allergies &or adverse reactions".
section (Allergies) > text	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	<a href="#">narrative</a>	section/text	See <a href="#">CDA narratives</a> .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section (Allergies) > <b>entry</b>	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(AllergyIntolerance)</a> as Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance	section/entry[adv]	
				section/entry[adv]/observation	observation <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)</a> .
section (Allergies) > <b>emptyReason</b>	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/@nullFlavor	<p><a href="#">Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor (required)<sup>1</sup></a></p> <p>The nullFlavor attribute is used to represent the reason a section is empty of clinical content.</p>

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology binding on emptyReason in Allergies [\[DH2019g\]](#) and in the CDA model are defined in [Non-Clinical Empty Reason FHIR to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor](#) concept map.

## 9.3 section (Medications)

For each section included, it is important to differentiate between affirmatively stating a patient has no relevant findings (e.g. no current medications) versus not including findings in the record (e.g. not applicable or unknown):

- Where a sending system does not have any clinical data to provide in that section it is expected that emptyReason is used
- Where a sending system can state that a patient is known not to have current medications it is expected an observation of assertion of no relevant finding is sent with the appropriate code (e.g. 1234391000168107 |No known current medications|)

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements</b>		Comes from linking elements			
section (Medications)	Information about medicines that are relevant to the encounter. The medicines included do not constitute a full medications list, but are those medicines that have specifically changed as a result of the encounter, or those medicines directly relevant to the encounter.	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	<p>section</p> <p>section/templatelid</p> <p>section/templatelid/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061"</p> <p>section/templatelid/@extension="1.0"</p>	<p>This section <b>SHALL</b> contain an entry (section/entry[meds]) or an emptyReason (section/@nullFlavor) but <b>SHALL NOT</b> contain both.</p> <p>This section <b>SHALL</b> contain at most one entry (section/entry[meds]) that conforms to <a href="#">observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a>; that entry <b>SHALL</b> assert that there are no known current medications (/entry[meds]/observation/value/@code="1234391000168107").</p> <p>The use of templatelid signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.</p>
section (Medications) > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>	section/title	
section (Medications) > code	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	<p>section/code</p> <p>section/code/@code="10160-0"</p> <p>section/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"</p> <p>section/code/@codeSystemName</p> <p>section/code/@displayName</p>	<p>Optional CDA element.</p> <p>codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "LOINC".</p> <p>displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "History of Medication use Narrative".</p>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section (Medications) > <b>text</b>	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	<a href="#">narrative</a>	section/text	See <a href="#">CDA narratives</a> .
section (Medications) > <b>entry</b>	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference</a> ( <a href="#">List</a> as List of Medicine Changes from an Event   <a href="#">Observation</a> as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	section/entry[meds]	<b>instantiation choices:</b>  If entry is a <a href="#">List</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[meds]/act. act <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)</a> .  If entry is an <a href="#">Observation</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[meds]/observation. observation <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a> .
				See: instantiation choices	
section (Medications) > <b>emptyReason</b>	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/@nullFlavor	<a href="#">Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor (required)<sup>1</sup></a>  The nullFlavor attribute is used to represent the reason a section is empty of clinical content.

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology binding on emptyReason in Medications [\[DH2019g\]](#) and in the CDA model are defined in [Non-Clinical Empty Reason FHIR to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor](#) concept map.

## 9.4 section (Medical History)

For each section included, it is important to differentiate between affirmatively stating a patient has no relevant findings (e.g. no relevant medical history) versus a finding that a patient does not have a specific condition versus not including findings in the record (e.g. not applicable or unknown):

- Where a sending system does not have any clinical data to provide in that section it is expected that emptyReason is used
- Where a sending system can state that a patient has no relevant history of findings it is expected an observation of assertion of no relevant finding is sent with the appropriate code (1224831000168103 | No relevant medical history|)
- Where a sending system cannot classify a coded entry as a procedure or a condition it is expected that the code is sent as a code in Condition
- Where a sending system cannot make classification as it has free text entry only, it is expected that the entry is sent as a free text in Condition
- Where a sending system can state that a patient does not have a specific condition or clinical finding it is expected that the appropriate negation code (e.g. 162023004 |No problem swallowing|) is sent as the code in Condition

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements		Comes from linking elements			
section (Medical History)	Information about the problems, diagnoses and medical or surgical procedures of a patient. This can include statements that a patient does not have a particular condition.	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	section	This section <b>SHALL</b> contain at least one entry (section/entry[med_hist]) or an emptyReason (section/@nullFlavor) but <b>SHALL NOT</b> contain both.  This section <b>SHALL NOT</b> contain both entries (section/entry[med_hist]) that conform to <a href="#">observation (Summary Statement of Condition)</a> or <a href="#">procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure)</a> , and that conform to <a href="#">observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a> .  This section <b>SHALL</b> contain at most one entry (section/entry[med_hist]) that conforms to <a href="#">observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a> ; that entry <b>SHALL</b> assert that there is no relevant medical history (//entry[med_hist]/observation/value/@code="1224831000168103").
				section/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100041"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section (Medical History) > <b>title</b>	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>	section/title="Medical History"	
section (Medical History) > <b>code</b>	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/code	
				section/code/@code="101.16117"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Medical History".
section (Medical History) > <b>text</b>	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	<a href="#">narrative</a>	section/text	See <a href="#">CDA narratives</a> .
section (Medical History) > <b>entry</b>	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	<a href="#">Reference</a> ( <a href="#">Condition</a> as Summary Statement of Condition   <a href="#">Procedure</a> as Summary Statement of Known Procedure   <a href="#">Observation</a> as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)	section/entry[med_hist]  See: instantiation choices	<b>instantiation choices:</b> If entry is a <a href="#">Condition</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[med_hist]/observation. observation <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">observation (Summary Statement of Condition)</a> . If entry is a <a href="#">Procedure</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[med_hist]/procedure. procedure <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure)</a> . If entry is an <a href="#">Observation</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[med_hist]/observation. observation <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a> .
section (Medical History) > <b>emptyReason</b>	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/@nullFlavor	<a href="#">Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor (required)<sup>1</sup></a> The nullFlavor attribute is used to represent the reason a section is empty of clinical content.

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology binding on emptyReason in Medical History [DH2019g] and in the CDA model are defined in [Non-Clinical Empty Reason FHIR to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor](#) concept map.

## 9.5 section (Immunisations)

For each section included, it is important to differentiate between affirmatively stating a patient has no relevant findings (e.g. no history of immunisation) versus not including findings in the record (e.g. not applicable or unknown):

- Where a sending system does not have any clinical data to provide in that section it is expected that emptyReason is used
- Where a sending system can state that a patient has no relevant history of findings it is expected an observation of assertion of no relevant finding is sent with the appropriate code (e.g. 1226591000168105 |No vaccine administered during encounter|).

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements</b>					Comes from linking elements
section (Immunisations)	Information about vaccinations administered or reported to be administered during this encounter. This may include statements that a patient has not had a particular vaccine administered.	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	section	This section <b>SHALL</b> contain at least one entry (section/entry[imm]) or an emptyReason (section/@nullFlavor) but <b>SHALL NOT</b> contain both.  This section <b>SHALL NOT</b> contain both entries (section/entry[imm]) that conform to <a href="#">substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine)</a> and that conform to <a href="#">observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a> .  This section <b>SHALL</b> contain at most one entry (section/entry[imm]) that conforms to <a href="#">observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a> ; that entry <b>SHALL</b> assert no history of vaccination (//entry[imm]/observation/value/@code="1234401000168109") or no vaccine administered during encounter (//entry[imm]/observation/value/@code="1226591000168105").
				section/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100058"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
section (Immunisations) > title	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>	section/title	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
section (Immunisations) > <b>code</b>	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/code	
				section/code/@code="11369-6"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "LOINC".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Immunization".
section (Immunisations) > <b>text</b>	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	<a href="#">narrative</a>	section/text	See <a href="#">CDA narratives</a> .
section (Immunisations) > <b>entry</b>	A reference to the actual resource from which the narrative in the section is derived.	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Immunization as Summary Statement of Vaccine   Observation as Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a>	section/entry[imm]	<b>instantiation choices:</b> If entry is an <a href="#">Immunization</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[imm]/substanceAdministration. substanceAdministration <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine)</a> . If entry is an <a href="#">Observation</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //section/entry[imm]/observation. observation <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)</a> .
section (Immunisations) > <b>emptyReason</b>	If the section is empty, why the list is empty. An empty section typically has some text explaining the empty reason.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/@nullFlavor	<a href="#">Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor (required)<sup>1</sup></a> The nullFlavor attribute is used to represent the reason a section is empty of clinical content.

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology binding on emptyReason in Immunisations [\[DH2019g\]](#) and in the CDA model are defined in [Non-Clinical Empty Reason FHIR to Empty Reason HL7 v3 NullFlavor](#) concept map.

## 9.6 section (Diagnostic Investigations)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Body Level 3 Data Elements</b>				Comes from linking elements	
section (Diagnostic Investigations)	Information about diagnostic tests or procedures performed on or requested for an individual during this encounter, that are considered relevant to the individual's ongoing care. This does not include a full list of diagnostic tests and procedures performed on or request for the individual but only those that are relevant to the encounter.	1..1	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	section	Editorial Note: The design of this section is incomplete. The intended structure of section.entry and section.emptyReason is not yet available.  The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				section/templateId	
				section/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100060"	
				section/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
section (Diagnostic Investigations) > <b>title</b>	The label for this particular section. This will be part of the rendered content for the document, and is often used to build a table of contents.	1..1	<a href="#">string</a>	section/title	
section (Diagnostic Investigations) > <b>code</b>	A code identifying the kind of content contained within the section. This must be consistent with the section title.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	section/code	
				section/code/@code="30954-2"	
				section/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				section/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element.  codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "LOINC".
				section/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element.  displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Relevant diagnostic tests & or laboratory data".
section (Diagnostic Investigations) > <b>text</b>	A human-readable narrative that contains the attested content of the section, used to represent the content of the resource to a human. The narrative need not encode all the structured data, but is required to contain sufficient detail to make it 'clinically safe' for a human to just read the narrative.	1..1	<a href="#">narrative</a>	section/text	See <a href="#">CDA narratives</a> .



# 10 Act CDA templates

This chapter contains mapping from the Composition (Event Summary) model and entry (e.g. Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance) models to CDA act classes, expressed as a series of CDA templates that describe how each CDA act is composed.

CDA templates are expected to be reused from one document type (or Composition model) to another. Each CDA template is presented under a heading in the format of "CDA schema element" ("model name") where "CDA schema element" is the root element for a CDA template and "model name" is the name of a model that constrains an element in the Event Summary Hierarchy.

## 10.1 encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)

For each Summary of an Encounter for an Event included:

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
CDA Header Data Elements					
Encounter	An interaction between a patient and healthcare provider(s) for the purpose of providing healthcare service(s) or assessing the health status of a patient.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	Context: /ClinicalDocument/	
				encompassingEncounter	
				encompassingEncounter/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				encompassingEncounter/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064"	
				encompassingEncounter/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				encompassingEncounter/id	See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.  This <b>SHALL</b> hold the same value as //encounter/id.
Encounter > <b>encounter-description</b>	Description, overview or summary of a clinical event and its reasons.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //encounter/text.
Encounter > <b>status</b>	planned   arrived   triaged   in-progress   onleave   finished   cancelled +.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //encounter/statusCode.
Encounter > <b>class</b>	inpatient   outpatient   ambulatory   emergency +.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	encompassingEncounter/code	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes.  <a href="#">ActEncounterCode (required)</a>  This <b>SHALL</b> hold the same value as //encounter/code.
Encounter > <b>type</b>	Specific type of encounter (e.g. e-mail consultation, surgical day-care, skilled nursing, rehabilitation).	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Encounter > <b>subject</b>	The patient or group present at the encounter.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
Encounter > <b>period</b>	The start and end time of the encounter.	1..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	encompassingEncounter/effectiveTime	See <time> for available attributes. This <b>SHALL</b> hold the same value as //encounter/effectiveTime.
Encounter > <b>reason</b>	Reason the encounter takes place, expressed as a code. For admissions, this can be used for a coded admission diagnosis.	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/value.

## 10.2 encounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)

For each Summary of an Encounter for an Event included:

- It is expected that this encounter provides further information from the same encounter that is captured in ClinicalDocument/componentOf/encompassingEncounter; and as such it is expected that encounter/code holds the same value as encompassingEncounter/code
- It is expected that status is ‘completed’
- It is expected that encounter-description may capture text about the encounter that is not captured in other fields and include a summary of the issues or problems, management strategies, outcomes or progress, possible prognosis, and the patient’s understanding of the healthcare event
- The following elements are not expected to be provided but are encouraged if the sending system has this capability:
  - class
  - type
  - reason
- If provided, type is expected to support categorisation of event summaries by the type of encounter.

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Comes from linking elements			
Encounter	An interaction between a patient and healthcare provider(s) for the purpose of providing healthcare service(s) or assessing the health status of a patient.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	encounter	
				encounter/@classCode="ENC"	
				encounter/@moodCode="EVN"	
				encounter/templatelid	The use of templatelid signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				encounter/templatelid/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062"	
				encounter/templatelid/@extension="1.0"	
				encounter/id	See <a href="#">&lt;id&gt;</a> for available attributes.
Encounter > <b>encounter-description</b>	Description, overview or summary of a clinical event and its reasons.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	encounter/text	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Encounter > <b>status</b>	planned   arrived   triaged   in-progress   onleave   finished   cancelled +.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	encounter/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). <a href="#">Encounter Act Status HL7 V3 (required)</a> <sup>1</sup>
Encounter > <b>class</b>	inpatient   outpatient   ambulatory   emergency +.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	encounter/code	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes. <a href="#">ActEncounterCode (required)</a>
Encounter > <b>type</b>	Specific type of encounter (e.g. e-mail consultation, surgical day-care, skilled nursing, rehabilitation).	0..*	<a href="#">code</a>	encounter/entryRelationship[type]	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/@typeCode="COMP"	Optional CDA element.
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/@code="103.17018"	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				encounter/entryRelationship[type]/observation/code/@displayName	displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Category".
Encounter > <b>subject</b>	The patient or group present at the encounter.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
Encounter > <b>period</b>	The start and end time of the encounter.	1..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	encounter/effectiveTime	See < <a href="#">time</a> > for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Encounter > <b>reason</b>	Reason the encounter takes place, expressed as a code. For admissions, this can be used for a coded admission diagnosis.	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	encounter/entryRelationship[reason] encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/@typeCode="RSON" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/@classCode="OBS" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@code="103.10141" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@displayName encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@codeSystemName encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/statusCode/@code="completed" encounter/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Clinical Indication". codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components". See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">Encounter Reason Codes (preferred)</a>

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology binding on status in Summary of an Encounter for an Event [DH2019g] and in the CDA model are defined in [EncounterStatus \(HL7 FHIR\) to Encounter Act Status HL7 v3](#) concept map.

## 10.3 observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)

For each Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance included:

- It is expected that verificationStatus will be ‘unconfirmed’ (where a sending system does not clearly have this element this should be the value sent), but may be ‘confirmed’
- It is expected that clinicalStatus will be ‘active’
- Where an authoring system only has substance or agent available and not a statement of allergy or intolerance that substance should be recorded in the code and optionally in reaction substance
- A ‘refuted’ allergy or intolerance should be represented with an appropriate negation code and a verificationStatus of ‘unconfirmed’ or ‘confirmed’ depending on the level of certainty
- Where a system intends to send type but has no reaction information (i.e. manifestation), the type is expected to form part of the section narrative and may also be present in the text element of allergy or intolerance observation

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
AllergyIntolerance	Risk of harmful or undesirable, physiological response which is unique to an individual and associated with exposure to a substance.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	observation	One of recorder or author-related-person <b>MAY</b> be present; both <b>SHALL NOT</b> be present.  clinicalStatus (entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation) <b>SHALL</b> be instantiated if the value (value/@code) is not "entered-in-error".
				observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				observation/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100014"	
				observation/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				observation/code	
				observation/code/@code="102.15517"	
				observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element.  codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element.  displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Adverse Reaction".
AllergyIntolerance > author-related-person	Reference to related person that recorded the record and takes responsibility for its content.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Related-Person)</a> as Base RelatedPerson	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/author.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > clinical-status	The clinical status of the allergy or intolerance.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/@typeCode="COMP"	Optional CDA element.
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@code="103.32013"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Clinical Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/value	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">AllergyIntolerance Clinical Status (required)</a>
AllergyIntolerance > verification-status	Assertion about certainty associated with the propensity, or potential risk, of a reaction to the identified substance (including pharmaceutical product).	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/@typeCode="COMP"	Optional CDA element.
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@code="103.32012"	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Verification Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/value	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">AllergyIntolerance Verification Status (required)</a>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > <b>type</b>	Identification of the underlying physiological mechanism for the reaction risk.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/value	The logical cardinality of this element is 0..1. The cardinality <b>SHALL</b> be interpreted as 0..1 for each instance of reaction (//entryRelationship[react]/observation).  See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes.  //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD".  <a href="#">Idiosyncratic Adverse Reaction Type (required)</a> <sup>1</sup>
AllergyIntolerance > <b>code</b>	Code for an allergy or intolerance statement (either a positive or a negated/excluded statement). This may be a code for a substance or pharmaceutical product that is considered to be responsible for the adverse reaction risk (e.g., 'Latex'), an allergy or intolerance condition (e.g., 'Latex allergy'), or a negated/excluded code for a specific substance or class (e.g., 'No latex allergy') or a general or categorical negated statement (e.g., 'No known allergy', 'No known drug allergies').	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	observation/value	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes.  //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD".  <a href="#">Indicator of Hypersensitivity or Intolerance to Substance (preferred)</a> <sup>2</sup>
AllergyIntolerance > <b>patient</b>	The patient who has the allergy or intolerance.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
AllergyIntolerance > <b>onset[x]</b>	Estimated or actual date, date-time, or age when allergy or intolerance was identified.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime   Age   Period   Range</a>	See: instantiation choices	See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes.  <b>instantiation choices:</b>  If onset[x] is a dateThen it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship/onset/observation/value.  If onset[x] is an Age then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship/onset/observation/value. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "PQ". The code for //observation/entryRelationship/onset/observation/code <b>SHALL</b> be code/@code="445518008" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96".  If onset[x] is a Period then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship/onset/observation/value.  If onset[x] is a Range then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship/onset/observation/value.
AllergyIntolerance > <b>recorder</b>	Individual who recorded the record and takes responsibility for its content.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Base Patient   Practitioner as Base Practitioner)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/author.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > note	Additional narrative about the propensity for the Adverse Reaction, not captured in other fields.	0..*	<a href="#">Annotation</a>	observation/entryRelationship[note] observation/entryRelationship[note]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/@classCode="ACT" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@code="103.16044" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101 observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@displayName observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/author observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/text	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Additional Comments". codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components". If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author. See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author. //text/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "ST".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
AllergyIntolerance > reaction	Details about each adverse reaction event linked to exposure to the identified substance.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	observation/entryRelationship[react] observation/entryRelationship[react]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/@classCode="OBS" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/@code="102.16474" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element.  codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".  displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Reaction Event".
AllergyIntolerance > reaction > substance	Identification of the specific substance (or pharmaceutical product) considered to be responsible for the Adverse Reaction event. Note: the substance for a specific reaction may be different from the substance identified as the cause of the risk, but it must be consistent with it. For instance, it may be a more specific substance (e.g. a brand medication) or a composite product that includes the identified substance. It must be clinically safe to only process the 'code' and ignore the 'reaction.substance'.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent] observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/@typeCode="CAGNT" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/participantRole observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/participantRole/playingEntity observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/participant[agent]/participantRole/playingEntity/code	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">Adverse Reaction Agent (preferred)</a> <sup>3</sup>
AllergyIntolerance > reaction > manifestation	Clinical symptoms and/or signs that are observed or associated with the adverse reaction event.	1..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst] observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/@typeCode="MFST" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/@inversionInd="true" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/@classCode="OBS" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[react]/observation/entryRelationship[mfst]/observation/code	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">Clinical Finding (preferred)</a> <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology binding on type in Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance [DH2019g] and in the CDA model are defined in [AllergyIntolerance Type FHIR to Idiosyncratic Adverse Reaction Type](#) concept map.

<sup>2</sup>Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on code in Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

<sup>3</sup>Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on substance in Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the substance element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

<sup>4</sup>Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on manifestation in Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance [DH2019g] is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the manifestation element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

## 10.4 act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)

For each List of Medicine Changes from an Event included:

- It is expected that this list was produced during production of the event summary; and as such it is expected that list date holds the same value as Composition date
- All medicine items relevant to an event should be included in the list
- An existing unchanged medicine item should be represented with the flag of 'nochange' and no change-description
- A recommendation to make a change including cessation, prescription, or dose change should be represented with a recommendation flag, e.g. 'prescription-recommended' or 'review-recommended', and the change-description should describe the proposed change and reason for recommendation
- A medicine item introduced during this event should be represented with the flag of 'new' or 'prescribed' as appropriate, and a change-description supplied that provides the reason for introduction of the medicine item
- A change to a medicine item during this event should be represented with the flag of 'amended' and a change-description supplied that describes the change e.g. dose, form, route, frequency
- A medicine item ceased during this event should be represented with the flag of 'ceased', 'suspended', or 'cancelled' as appropriate, and a change-description supplied that provides the reason for ceasing the medicine item; if a medicine item is no longer actively taken as the prescribed course has been completed this should have the flag 'ceased'

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
List	A set of information summarized from a list of other resources.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	act	
				act/@classCode="ACT"	
				act/@moodCode="EVN"	
				act/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				act/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063"	
				act/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
List > status	Indicates the current state of this list.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	act/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). <sup>1</sup>
				act/statusCode/@code="active"	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
List > code	This code defines the purpose of the list - why it was created.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	act/code	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes.
				act/code/@code="10160-0"	
				act/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"	
				act/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element.  codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "LOINC".
				act/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element.  displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "History of Medication use Narrative".
List > subject	The common subject (or patient) of the resources that are in the list, if there is one.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
List > date	The date that the list was prepared.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>	act/effectiveTime	See < <a href="#">time</a> > for available attributes.
List > source	The entity responsible for deciding what the contents of the list were. Where the list was created by a human, this is the same as the author of the list.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/author.
List > entry	List of medicine type entries	1..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	act/entryRelationship[item]	
				act/entryRelationship[item]/typeCode="COMP"	
List > entry > change-description	Description of a change including the reason for change.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//entryRelationship[flag]/observation/text	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
List > entry > <b>flag</b>	The flag allows the system constructing the list to indicate the role and significance of the item in the list.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	//entryRelationship[flag] //entryRelationship[flag]/@typeCode="SUBJ" //entryRelationship[flag]/@inversionInd="true" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/@classCode="OBS" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/@code="288533004" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/@displayName //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/code/@codeSystemName //entryRelationship[flag]/observation/value	The logical element flag <b>SHALL</b> (i.e. //entryRelationship[flag]) be instantiated as a direct child of the logical element item (i.e. //act/entryRelationship[item]).  For example //act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[flag].
List > entry > <b>item</b>	A reference to the actual resource from which data was derived.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(MedicationStatement as Summary Statement of Known Medicine)</a>	act/entryRelationship[item] act/entryRelationship[item]/substanceAdministration	substanceAdministration <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine)</a> .

<sup>1</sup>Note: Mappings between the set of concepts in the terminology binding on status in List of Medicine Changes from an Event [\[DH2019g\]](#) and in the CDA model are defined in [List Status FHIR to Document Act Status v3](#) concept map.

## 10.5 substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine)

For each Summary Statement of Known Medicine included:

- It is expected that substanceAdministration/@moodCode will be 'EVN'
- MedicationStatement status should be consistent with the value of List flag:
  - A medicine item ceased during this event should be represented with a status of 'aborted' or 'cancelled' or 'completed'; including where a medicine item is no longer actively taken as the prescribed course has been completed
  - A medicine item introduced during this event should be represented with a status of 'new'
  - An existing unchanged medicine item should be represented with a status of 'active' or 'completed' depending if the patient is currently (active) taking the medicine item
  - An medicine item changed during this event should be represented with a status of 'active'
  - A recommendation to make a change may not directly result in a similar status unless it is a recommendation to introduce a medicine item. The status should represent the current state of the medicine item for the patient (active, completed, new) not the recommendation
- MedicationStatement taken should be consistent with the value of List flag:
  - A medicine item that has not yet been taken or has never been taken should be represented with taken 'n'
  - A medicine item the patient is currently taking or has taken should be represented with taken 'y'

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Comes from linking elements			
<b>MedicationStatement</b>	A record of a medication that is being consumed by a patient. A MedicationStatement may indicate that the patient may be taking the medication now, or has taken the medication in the past or will be taking the medication in the future. The source of this information can be the patient, significant other (such as a family member or spouse), or a clinician. A common scenario where this information is captured is during the history taking process during a patient visit or stay. The medication information may come from sources such as the patient's memory, from a prescription bottle, or from a list of medications the patient, clinician or other party maintains. The primary difference between a medication statement and a medication administration is that the medication administration has complete administration information and is based on actual administration information from the person who administered the medication. A medication statement is often, if not always, less specific. There is no required date/time when the medication was administered, in fact we only know that a source has reported the patient is taking this medication, where details such as time, quantity, or rate or even medication product may be incomplete or missing or less precise. As stated earlier, the medication statement information may come from the patient's memory, from a prescription bottle or from a list of medications the patient, clinician or other party maintains. Medication administration is more formal and is not missing detailed information.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<b>substanceAdministration</b>	
				substanceAdministration/@classCode="SBADM"	
				substanceAdministration/@moodCode	<b>SHALL NOT</b> be "RQO".
				substanceAdministration/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				substanceAdministration/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015"	
				substanceAdministration/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
MedicationStatement > <b>status</b>	A code representing the patient or other source's judgment about the state of the medication used that this statement is about. Generally this will be active or completed.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	substanceAdministration/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). <a href="#">Medication Act Status HL7 V3 value set (required)</a>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > category	Indicates where type of medication statement and where the medication is expected to be consumed or administered.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category] substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/@typeCode="COMP" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/@classCode="OBS" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/@code="276339004" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/@codeSystemName substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/code/@displayName substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[category]/observation/value	Optional CDA element.  codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "SNOMED CT".  displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Environment".  See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">MedicationStatementCategory (preferred)</a>
MedicationStatement > medication[x]	Identifies the medication being administered. This is either a link to a resource representing the details of the medication or a simple attribute carrying a code that identifies the medication from a known list of medications.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">Australian Medication (example)</a> <a href="#">MIMS Terminology (example)</a> <a href="#">Australian Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme Schedule Item (example)</a> <a href="#">GTIN for Medicines (example)</a> <sup>1</sup>
MedicationStatement > informationSource	The person or organization that provided the information about the taking of this medication. Note: Use derivedFrom when a MedicationStatement is derived from other resources, e.g Claim or MedicationRequest.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson   Patient as Base Patient   Practitioner as Base Practitioner)</a>	substanceAdministration/informant	informant <b>SHALL</b> conform to the template defined in <a href="#">informant (Base RelatedPerson)</a> or <a href="#">informant (Base Patient)</a> or <a href="#">informant (Base Practitioner)</a> .  If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget.
MedicationStatement > subject	The person, animal or group who is/was taking the medication.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > <b>taken</b>	Indicator of the certainty of whether the medication was taken by the patient.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p>This logical element may have a value of y   n   unk   na as per <a href="#">MedicationStatementTaken (required)</a></p> <p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>When the logical assertion is 'y', there is no direct mapping into CDA as this is implicit in the instantiation of the substanceAdministration class.</p> <p>When the logical assertion is 'n', this is instantiated as //substanceAdministration/@negationInd="true" unless status is "new" in which case this is implicit in the statusCode; a negationInd <b>SHALL NOT</b> be present where substanceAdministration/statusCode is "new".</p> <p>When the logical assertion is 'unk' or 'na', this is instantiated as //substanceAdministration/@nullFlavor="UNK" or //substanceAdministration/@nullFlavor="NA" respectively.</p>
MedicationStatement > <b>reason-Code</b>	A reason for why the medication is being/was taken.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/@typeCode="RSON"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@code="103.10141"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Clinical Indication".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[reason]/observation/value	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">Medication Reason Taken (preferred)</a> <sup>2</sup>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
MedicationStatement > <b>note</b>	Provides extra information about the medication statement that is not conveyed by the other attributes.	0..*	<a href="#">Annotation</a>	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note] substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/@typeCode="COMP" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/@classCode="ACT" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/@moodCode="EVN" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@code="103.16044" substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101 substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@displayName substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystemName substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/author substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[note]/act/text	Optional CDA element.  displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Additional Comments".  codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".  If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.  If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.  //text/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "ST".
MedicationStatement > <b>dosage</b>	Indicates how the medication is/was or should be taken by the patient.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Dosage as AU Base Dosage)</a>	substanceAdministration/text	dosage <b>SHALL</b> at least include text or patient instructions instantiated as //substanceAdministration/text.  Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Dosage</a> .

<sup>1</sup>Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on medication[x] in Summary Statement of Known Medicine [\[DH2019g\]](#) is as optional slices on the [coding](#) part of the medication[x] element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as example bindings.

<sup>2</sup>Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on reasonCode in Summary Statement of Known Medicine [\[DH2019g\]](#) is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the reasonCode element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

## 10.6 observation (Assertion of No Relevant Finding)

For each Assertion of No Relevant Finding included:

- It is expected that status will be 'final'

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Context: Comes from linking elements			
<b>Observation</b>	Statement of clinical judgement that there are no items of specific interest after a reasonable investigation.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	<b>observation</b>	
				observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				observation/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100032"	
				observation/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
<b>Observation &gt; <b>status</b></b>	The status of the result value.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	observation/entryRelationship[status]	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/@typeCode="COMP"	Optional CDA element.
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/@code="103.32010"	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Observation Result Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[status]/observation/value	See <a href="#">code</a> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">ObservationStatus (required)</a>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Observation > <b>code</b>	Describes what was observed. Sometimes this is called the observation 'name'.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	observation/code	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes.
				observation/code/@code="ASSERTION"	
				observation/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"	
				observation/code/@codeSystemName	codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "v3 Code System ActCode". Optional CDA element.
				observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Assertion".
Observation > <b>subject</b>	The patient, or group of patients, location, or device whose characteristics (direct or indirect) are described by the observation and into whose record the observation is placed.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
Observation > <b>effective[x]</b>	The time or time-period the observed value is asserted as being true. For biological subjects - e.g. human patients - this is usually called the 'physiologically relevant time'. This is usually either the time of the procedure or of specimen collection, but very often the source of the date/time is not known, only the date/time itself.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>   <a href="#">Period</a>	observation/effectiveTime	See < <a href="#">time</a> > for available attributes.
Observation > <b>performer</b>	Who was responsible for asserting the observed value as 'true'.	0..*	<a href="#">Reference(Practitioner as Base Practitioner   Organization as Base Organization   RelatedPerson as Base RelatedPerson   Patient as Base Patient)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/author/assignedAuthor.
Observation > <b>value[x]</b>	The information determined as a result of making the observation, if the information has a simple value.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	observation/value	//value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". //value/@nullFlavor <b>SHALL NOT</b> be instantiated. <a href="#">Assertion Of Absence value set (required)</a>

## 10.7 substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Vaccine)

For each Summary Statement of Vaccine included:

- It is expected that status will be ‘completed’
- It is expected that primarySource will be ‘true’
- Where an authoring system does not have the dose status available as a distinct element it is expected that no data is sent.

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements				Context: Comes from linking elements	
Immunization	Describes the event of a patient being administered a vaccination or a record of a vaccination as reported by a patient, a clinician or another party and may include vaccine reaction information and what vaccination protocol was followed.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	substanceAdministration	
				substanceAdministration/@classCode="SBADM"	
				substanceAdministration/@moodCode="EVN"	
				substanceAdministration/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				substanceAdministration/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100057"	
				substanceAdministration/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
Immunization > <b>status</b>	Indicates the current status of the vaccination event.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	substanceAdministration/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). <a href="#">Immunization Act Status HL7 V3 (required)</a>
Immunization > <b>notGiven</b>	Indicates if the vaccination was or was not given.	1..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	When the logical assertion is 'false', there is no direct mapping into CDA as this is implicit in the instantiation of the substanceAdministration class  When the logical assertion is 'true', this is instantiated as //substanceAdministration/@negationInd="true".
Immunization > <b>vaccineCode</b>	Vaccine that was administered or was to be administered.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	substanceAdministration/consumable	See <a href="#">code</a> for available attributes.  <a href="#">Australian Medicines Terminology Vaccine (preferred)</a> <a href="#">Australian Immunisation Register Vaccine (preferred)<sup>1</sup></a>
				substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct	
				substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial	
				substanceAdministration/consumable/manufacturedProduct/manufacturedMaterial/code	
Immunization > <b>patient</b>	The patient who either received or did not receive the immunization.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient) as Patient with Mandatory Identifier</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Immunization > <b>date</b>	Date vaccine administered or was to be administered.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>	substanceAdministration/effectiveTime	See < <a href="#">time</a> > for available attributes.
Immunization > <b>primarySource</b>	An indication that the content of the record is based on information from the person who administered the vaccine. This reflects the context under which the data was originally recorded.	1..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/typeCode="COMP"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code/@code="103.17061"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element.  displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Information from a Primary Source".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element.  codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[prim_sour]/observation/value	The value is 'true' if the source of the information is a primary source.  //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "BL".
Immunization > <b>vaccinationProtocol</b>	Contains information about the protocol(s) under which the vaccine was administered.	0..*	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Immunization > vaccinationProtocol > <b>doseSequence</b>	Nominal position in a series.	0..1	<a href="#">positiveInt</a>	substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/@typeCode="COMP"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/sequenceNumber/@value	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/@classCode="SPLY"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/@moodCode="EVN"	
				substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[sply]/supply/independentInd/@value="false"	
Immunization > vaccinationProtocol > <b>doseStatus</b>	Indicates if the immunization event should 'count' against the protocol.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	substanceAdministration/text	Optional CDA element.  This logical element, if available in the source system is expected to form part of //substanceAdministration/text.

<sup>1</sup>Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on vaccineCode in Summary Statement of Vaccine [DH2019g] is as optional slices on the [coding](#) part of the vaccineCode element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

<sup>2</sup>Note: The source representation of this terminology binding on vaccineCode in Summary Statement of Vaccine [DH2019g] is as optional slices on the [coding](#) part of the vaccineCode element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a set of preferred bindings.

## 10.8 observation (Summary Statement of Condition)

For each Summary Statement of Condition included:

- It is expected that verificationStatus will be 'confirmed'
- It is expected that clinicalStatus will be 'active'
- A 'refuted' condition should be represented with an appropriate negation code and a verificationStatus of 'unconfirmed' or 'confirmed' depending on the level of certainty
- A 'refuted' condition should be represented with an appropriate negation code and a clinicalStatus of 'inactive'

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements					
<b>Condition</b>	A clinical condition, problem, diagnosis, or other event, situation, issue, or clinical concept that has risen to a level of concern.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	observation	clinicalStatus (entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation) <b>SHALL</b> be instantiated if verificationStatus (entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation) is present and the value (value/@code) is not "entered-in-error".  clinicalStatus <b>SHALL</b> be instantiated if abatement is present with the value of clinicalStatus (entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/value/@code) as "inactive", "resolved", or "remission".
				observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/templatelid	The use of templatelid signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				observation/templatelid/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100054"	
				observation/templatelid/@extension="1.0"	
				observation/code	
				observation/code/@code="282291009"	
				observation/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"	
				observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element.  codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "SNOMED CT".
				observation/code/@displayName	displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Diagnosis interpretation".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Condition > <b>recorder</b>	Reference to an individual who recorded the condition and takes responsibility for its content.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Related-Person)</a> as Base RelatedPerson   <a href="#">Patient</a> as Base Patient   <a href="#">Practitioner</a> as Base Practitioner)	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/author.
Condition > <b>clinicalStatus</b>	The clinical status of the condition.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/@typeCode="COMP"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/@classCode="OBS"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@code="103.32013"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Clinical Status".
				observation/entryRelationship[clin_status]/observation/value	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">Condition Clinical Status Codes (required)</a>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Condition > <b>verificationStatus</b>	The verification status to support the clinical status of the condition.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	observation/entryRelationship[ver_status] observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/@classCode="OBS" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@code="103.32012" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/code/@displayName observation/entryRelationship[ver_status]/observation/value	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Verification Status". See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">Condition Verification Status (required)</a>
Condition > <b>code</b>	Identification of the condition, problem or diagnosis.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	observation/value	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "CD". <a href="#">Clinical Condition (preferred)</a> <sup>1</sup>
Condition > <b>subject</b>	Indicates the patient or group who the condition record is associated with.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Condition > <b>onset[x]</b>	Estimated or actual date or date-time the condition began, in the opinion of the clinician.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>   <a href="#">Age</a>   <a href="#">Period</a>   <a href="#">Range</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p>See <a href="#">time</a> for available attributes.</p> <p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If onset[x] is a dateTime then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p> <p>If onset[x] is an Age then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/value. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "PQ". The code for //observation/entryRelationship[onset]/observation/code <b>SHALL</b> be code/@code="445518008" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96".</p> <p>If onset[x] is a Period then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p> <p>If onset[x] is a Range then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/low/@value.</p>
Condition > <b>abatement[x]</b>	The date or estimated date that the condition resolved or went into remission. This is called 'abatement' because of the many overloaded connotations associated with 'remission' or 'resolution' - Conditions are never really resolved, but they can abate.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>   <a href="#">Age</a>   <a href="#">boolean</a>   <a href="#">Period</a>   <a href="#">Range</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p>See <a href="#">time</a> for available attributes.</p> <p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If abatement[x] is a dateTime then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/high/@value.</p> <p>If abatement[x] is an Age then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/entryRelationship[abat]/observation/value. //value/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "PQ". The code for //observation/entryRelationship[abat]/observation/code <b>SHALL</b> be code/@code="1292971000168105" and code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96".</p> <p>If abatement[x] is a Period then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/high/@value.</p> <p>If abatement[x] is a Range then it is expected to be instantiated as //observation/effectiveTime/high/@value.</p>

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Condition > <b>note</b>	Additional information about the Condition. This is a general notes/comments entry for description of the Condition, its diagnosis and prognosis.	0..*	<a href="#">Annotation</a>	observation/entryRelationship[note] observation/entryRelationship[note]/@typeCode="COMP" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/@classCode="ACT" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/@moodCode="EVN" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@code="103.16044" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101" observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystemName observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@displayName observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/author observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime observation/entryRelationship[note]/act/text	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components". displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Additional Comments" If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author. See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author/time. //text/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "ST".

<sup>1</sup>Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on code in Summary Statement of Condition [\[DH2019g\]](#) is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

## 10.9 procedure (Summary Statement of Known Procedure)

For each Summary Statement of Known Procedure included:

- It is expected that status will be 'completed'

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Conformance level comes from linking elements		Context: Context: Comes from linking elements			
Procedure	An action that is or was performed on a patient. This can be a physical intervention like an operation, or less invasive like counseling or hypnotherapy.	1..1	<a href="#">DomainResource</a>	procedure	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				procedure/@classCode="PROC"	
				procedure/@moodCode="EVN"	
				procedure/templateId	
				procedure/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100055"	
				procedure/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
Procedure > <b>status</b>	A code specifying the state of the procedure. Generally this will be in-progress or completed state.	1..1	<a href="#">code</a>	procedure/statusCode	This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). <a href="#">Procedure Act Status HL7 V3 (required)</a>
Procedure > <b>code</b>	The specific procedure that is performed. Use text if the exact nature of the procedure cannot be coded (e.g. 'Laparoscopic Appendectomy').	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	procedure/code	See <a href="#">code</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">Procedure (preferred)</a> <sup>1</sup>
Procedure > <b>subject</b>	The person, animal or group on which the procedure was performed.	1..1	<a href="#">Reference(Patient as Patient with Mandatory Identifier)</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; this is implicit in //ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole.
Procedure > <b>performed[x]</b>	The date(time)/period over which the procedure was performed. Allows a period to support complex procedures that span more than one date, and also allows for the length of the procedure to be captured.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime   Period</a>	procedure/effectiveTime	See <a href="#">time</a> for available attributes.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Procedure > <b>note</b>	Any other notes about the procedure. E.g. the operative notes.	0..*	<a href="#">Annotation</a>	procedure/entryRelationship[note]	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/@typeCode="COMP"	Optional CDA element.
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/@classCode="ACT"	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/@moodCode="EVN"	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@code="103.16044"	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"	
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@displayName	Optional CDA element. displayName <b>SHOULD</b> be "Additional Comments".
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/code/@codeSystemName	Optional CDA element. codeSystemName <b>SHOULD</b> be "NCTIS Data Components".
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/author	Optional CDA element. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/effectiveTime	Optional CDA element. See <a href="#">&lt;time&gt;</a> for available attributes. If this element is not instantiated the data is considered to be included via induction in //ClinicalDocument/author.
				procedure/entryRelationship[note]/act/text	//text/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "ST".

<sup>1</sup>Note: The source representation of the terminology binding on code in Summary Statement of Known Procedure [\[DH2019g\]](#) is as an optional slice on the [coding](#) part of the code element. In the representation of the model presented in this specification it is normalised as a preferred binding.

## 10.10 ext:coverage (Practitioner qualification)

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Header Data Elements</b>					Context: /ClinicalDocument/component/structuredBody/component[admin_obs]/section/ See <a href="#">Administrative Observations</a> .
Practitioner > qualification	Qualifications obtained by training and certification.	Cardinality comes from linking elements	<a href="#">BackboneElement</a>	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/@typeCode="COVBY"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/templateId	The use of templateId signals the imposition of a set of template-defined constraints.
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/templateId/@root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/templateId/@extension="1.0"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/@classCode="COV"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/@moodCode="EVN"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/@typeCode="HLD"	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/ext:participantRole	
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/ext:participantRole/@classCode="ASSIGNED"	Practitioner > qualification is represented in CDA by an entitlement (qualification) held by a participant (practitioner).  This SHALL hold the same value as practitioner that this qualification is associated with (the value in this id element SHALL be present in separate participation).
				ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[prac]/ext:participantRole/ext:id	
Practitioner > qualification > identifier	An identifier that applies to this person's qualification in this role.	0..*	<a href="#">Identifier</a>	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:id	
Practitioner > qualification > code	Coded representation of the qualification.	1..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:code	See <a href="#">&lt;code&gt;</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">v2 table 0360, Version 2.7 (example)</a>
Practitioner > qualification > period	Period during which the qualification is valid.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:effectiveTime	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Practitioner > qualification > issuer	Organization that regulates and issues the qualification.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference(Organization as Base Organization)</a>	ext:coverage2[prac_qual]/ext:entitlement/ext:participant[issuer]	<p>ext:participant[issuer]/@typeCode SHALL be "AUT".</p> <p>ext:participant[issuer]/ext:participantRole SHALL be "COMPAR".</p>

# 11 Common patterns

## 11.1 code

The <code> element pattern refines the kind of act being recorded. It is of data type CD CWE (Concept Descriptor, Coded With Extensibility). It may have:

- a null attribute (*nullFlavor*)
- *originalText*
- *code* and *codeSystem*
- *qualifier* (CD)
- *translation* (CD)
- any combination of the above.

A *displayName* is highly recommended.

Where used, the *code* attribute **SHALL** contain a code from the relevant vocabulary.

Where used, the *codeSystem* attribute **SHALL** contain the OID for the relevant vocabulary. Values for coding systems can be obtained from the HL7 OID registry accessible from the HL7 home web page at [www.hl7.org](http://www.hl7.org).

Where used, the *displayName* attribute **SHALL** contain a human-readable description of the code value that is provided by the code system; *displayName* is a case insensitive value except where explicitly stated otherwise by the code system. A preferred interface term for display that is not a member of the description set supplied by the code system **SHALL NOT** be used to populate the *displayName* attribute.

The *codeSystemName* **MAY** be present and, where used, **SHALL** contain a human-readable name for the coding system.

Where used, the *originalText* element **SHALL** be used to carry the full text associated with this code as selected by, typed by or displayed to the author of this statement including the contents of the *qualifier* if present.

Where used, the *qualifier* element **SHALL** carry a code from the same code system as the code; for example if the main concept code is from SNOMED CT the *qualifier* also has to be taken from SNOMED CT as the use of a different code system for a *qualifier* is not allowed. The use of the *qualifier* element is governed by the code system used and cannot be used with code systems that do not provide for qualifiers (e.g. pre-coordinated systems).

Codes can be obtained from a variety of sources. Additional vocabularies are also available from the HL7 Version 3 Vocabulary tables, available to HL7 members through the HL7 web site. In some cases, the vocabularies have been specified; in others, a particular code has been fixed or there is no vocabulary specified. For guidance on coding common clinical concepts in CDA documents see [Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance \[NEHT2011bv\]](#).

Where a code is used from a different code system to that specified, or where the code lies outside the reference set specified, or where a code system or reference set is not specified, the code value **SHALL** be consistent with the meaning of the associated element of the Event Summary model.

If a vocabulary is specified in this implementation guide and no suitable code can be found, the *originalText* element **SHALL** be used to carry the full text as selected by, typed by or displayed to the author of this statement.

If a vocabulary is specified in this implementation guide and it is not possible to use this vocabulary, but an alternate vocabulary is in use, the *originalText* element **SHALL** be used to carry the full text as selected by, typed by or displayed to the author of this statement. The *code* element **SHALL** be used to carry the relevant information from the alternate vocabulary and the alternate vocabulary **SHALL** be registered with HL7 and allocated an appropriate OID.

If an alternate vocabulary is in use and a translation into the specified code system is available, the *originalText* element **SHALL** be used to carry the full text as selected by, typed by or displayed to the author of this statement. The *code* element **SHALL** be used to carry the relevant information from the alternate vocabulary and the alternate vocabulary **SHALL** be registered with HL7 and allocated an appropriate OID. The *translation* element **SHALL** be used to indicate the translation code from the specified vocabulary.

### Example 11.1. code

```
<!-- Specified code system in use -->
<code
  code="271807003"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
  codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
  codeSystemVersion="20101130"
  displayName="Skin rash" />

<!-- Specified code system in use with a qualifier -->
<code
  code="23986001"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
  codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
  displayName="Glaucoma" >
  <originalText>Glaucoma, left</originalText>
  <qualifier>
    <name
      code="272741003"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.3883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="Laterality" />
    <value
      code="7771000"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="Left"
      xsi:type="CD" />
  </qualifier>
</code>
```

```
<!-- Alternate code system in use and a translation into the specified code system is available -->
<code
  code="J45.9"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.135"
  codeSystemName="icd10am"
  displayName="Asthma, unspecified">
  <originalText>Asthma</originalText>
  <translation
    code="195967001"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
    codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
    displayName="Asthma"/>
</code>

<!-- Alternate code system in use and no translation into the specified code system is available -->
<code
  code="J45.9"
  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.135"
  codeSystemName="icd10am"
  displayName="Asthma, unspecified">
  <originalText>Asthma</originalText>
</code>

<!-- No suitable code can be found or there is no code system in use -->
<code
  <originalText>Asthma</originalText>
</code>
```

## 11.2 id

The <id> element pattern is of data type II (Instance Identifier). The II data type may have:

- a null attribute (*nullFlavor*)
- a *root*
- a *root* and an *extension*
- a *root* and an *extension* and an *assigningAuthorityName*
- a *root* and an *assigningAuthorityName*
- a *root* and an *assigningAuthorityName* and a *displayable*
- a *root* and an *extension* and a *displayable*
- a *root* and an *extension* and an *assigningAuthorityName* and a *displayable*
- a *root* and a *displayable*

The root attribute is **REQUIRED** and is a unique identifier that guarantees the global uniqueness of the instance identifier. The root alone **MAY** be the entire instance identifier. The root attribute **SHALL** be a UUID or OID.

The extension attribute **MAY** be present, and is a character string as a unique identifier within the scope of the identifier root.

In the case of business or technical identifier an *assigningAuthorityName* is **RECOMMENDED**.

Identifiers appear in this implementation guide for two different reasons. The first is that the identifier has been identified as relevant to the business process or clinical workflow. These identifiers are documented in mapping tables in the Element column, e.g. Composition > identifier or Medication Statement (Prescription) > identifier, which make clear the meaning of this identifier.

In addition, the implementation makes clear that identifiers may also be found on many other parts of the CDA structure. These identifiers, often referred to as technical identifiers, are allowed to facilitate record matching across multiple versions of related documents, so that the same record can consistently be identified, in spite of variations in the information as the record passes through time or between systems. These identifiers have no meaning in the business specification. If senders provide one of these identifiers, it **SHALL** always be the same identifier in all versions of the record, and it **SHALL** be globally unique per the rules of the II data type.

### Example 11.2. id

```
<id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19" extension="123A45" />  
<ext:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-O" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003621566684455" />
```

## 11.3 time

When a time value is supplied it **SHALL** include hours and minutes.

When a time value is supplied it **MAY** include seconds and fractions of seconds.

When a time value is supplied it **SHALL** include a time zone.

The <time> element pattern is of data type TS (Point in Time) and can also be an interval between two times (IVL\_TS), representing a period of time. Both forms can either have a nullFlavor attribute or child components following allowed patterns.

A simple timestamp (point in time) will only contain a value attribute containing the time value, expressed as a series of digits as long as required or as available.

### Example 11.3. Simple timestamp

```
<time value="20091030" />
```

This represents "October 30, 2009" to calendar day precision. In cases where the containing element is defined in the CDA schema as "ANY" data type, it is useful to provide an xsi:type attribute, set to the value "TS".

The period of time pattern is defined in terms of one or both of its lowest and highest values. The low and high elements are instances of the timestamp pattern described above. More complex time period concepts can be expressed by combining a high, low, or centre element with a width element.

### Example 11.4. Low time

```
<period>
  <low value="20091030" />
</period>
```

This represents "a period after October 30, 2009". In cases where the containing element is defined in the CDA schema as "ANY" data type, it is useful to provide an xsi:type attribute, set to the value "IVL\_TS", as in the next example.

### Example 11.5. Interval timestamp 1

```
<period xsi:type="IVL_TS">
  <high value="200910301030+1000" />
</period>
```

This represents "a period before 10:30 a.m. UTC+10, October 30, 2009". A discretionary xsi:type attribute has been provided to explicitly cast the pattern to "IVL\_TS".

#### Example 11.6. Interval timestamp 2

```
<period xsi:type="IVL_TS">
  <low value="2007" />
  <high value="2009" />
</period>
```

This represents "the calendar years between 2007 and 2009". The low element **SHALL** precede the high element. As per the previous example, a discretionary xsi:type attribute has been provided to explicitly cast the pattern to "IVL\_TS".

#### Example 11.7. Width time

```
<period>
  <high value="20091017" />
  <width value="2" unit="wk" />
</period>
```

This expresses "two weeks before October 17th, 2009". A low value can be derived from this.

## 11.4 Entity Identifier

### CDA mapping

Element	Definition	Card	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Data Elements</b>				
Entity Identifier	A number or code issued for the purpose of identifying a participant within a health-care context.	The cardinality of the element comes from the linking parent.	//ext:asEntityIdentifier	
		1..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/@classCode="IDENT"	
		1..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id	
		1..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@root	@root <b>SHALL</b> be an OID and <b>SHALL NOT</b> be a UUID. @root <b>SHALL</b> be a globally unique object identifier (i.e. OID) that identifies the combination of geographic area, issuer and type. If no such OID exists, it <b>SHALL</b> be defined before any identifiers can be created.
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@extension	If present, @extension <b>SHALL</b> be a unique identifier within the scope of the root that is populated directly from the designation.
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@assigningAuthorityName	@assigningAuthorityName <b>SHOULD</b> be used and, if it is used, <b>SHALL</b> be a human-readable name for the namespace represented in the root that is populated with the issuer, or identifier type, or a concatenation of both as appropriate. This <b>SHOULD NOT</b> be used for machine readability purposes.
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:code	See < <a href="#">code</a> > for available attributes.
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:assigningGeographicArea	
		1..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:assigningGeographicArea/@classCode="PLC"	
		0..1	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:assigningGeographicArea/ext:name	If present, ext:name <b>SHALL</b> be the range and extent that the identifier applies to the object with which it is associated that is populated directly from the geographic area. This <b>SHOULD NOT</b> be used for machine readability purposes.  <a href="#">Healthcare Identifier Geographic Area (preferred)</a>  This element is expected to be populated with the display, e.g. "National Identifier".

### Example 11.8. Entity Identifier

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- person -->  
<x:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
  <x:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.800360883357361" assigningAuthorityName="IHI" />  
  <x:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">  
    <x:name>National Identifier</x:name>  
  </x:assigningGeographicArea>  
</x:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
<x:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
  <x:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.29.8003621566684455" extension="542181" assigningAuthorityName="Croydon GP Centre" />  
  <x:code code="MP" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" />  
</x:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
<!-- organisation -->  
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
  <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-O" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003621566684455" />  
  <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">  
    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>  
  </ext:assigningGeographicArea>  
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
```

## 11.5 Personal Relationship

### CDA mapping

Element	Definition	Card	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Data Elements</b>				
Personal Relationship	The relationship of a participant to a subject of care (patient).	The cardinality of the element comes from the linking parent.	//ext:personalRelationship	This logical data component <b>SHALL NOT</b> be instantiated if the participant is a healthcare provider. If ext:personalRelationship is instantiated the value of Entity Identifier <b>SHALL NOT</b> be a HPI-I.
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/@classCode="PRS"	
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:id	
		1..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:code	<a href="#">Related Person Relationship Type (extensible)</a> See <code> for available attributes.
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:statusCode	<a href="#">v3 Code System RoleStatus (required)</a> See <code> for available attributes.
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:effectiveTime	See <time> for available attributes.
		1..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship	
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/@classCode="PSN"	
		0..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/@determinerCode="INSTANCE"	
		1..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/id	This <b>SHALL</b> hold the same value as /ClinicalDocument/recordTarget/patientRole/id.
		1..1	//ext:personalRelationship/ext:asPersonalRelationship/administrativeGenderCode/@nullFlavor="NA"	Included for CDA conformance only.

## Example 11.9. Personal Relationship

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- patient -->  
<recordTarget>  
  <patientRole>  
    <!-- patient identifier-->  
    <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>  
  </patientRole>  
</recordTarget>  
  
<!-- author with personal relationship -->  
<author>  
  <time value="200911031647+1000"/>  
  <assignedAuthor>  
    <!-- author identifier-->  
    <id root="86d729b8-72d2-460a-a64c-489a51607450"/>  
    <assignedPerson>  
      <!-- personal relationship -->  
      <ext:personalRelationship>  
        <!--relationship-->  
        <ext:code code="SIGOTHR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" codeSystemName="v3 Code System RoleCode" displayName="significant other" />  
        <!--patient-->  
        <ext:asPersonalRelationship>  
          <!-- patient identifier-->  
          <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>  
          <administrativeGenderCode nullFlavor="NA" />  
        </ext:asPersonalRelationship>  
      </ext:personalRelationship>  
    </assignedPerson>  
  </assignedAuthor>  
</author>  
  
<!-- participant performer with personal relationship -->  
<participant typeCode="PRF">  
  <associatedEntity classCode="ASSIGNED">  
    <!--participant performer identifier-->  
    <id root="f3351b5c-8a6c-437c-a55c-a6c121873456"/>  
    <!-- personal relationship -->  
    <associatedPerson>  
      <ext:personalRelationship>  
        <!--relationship-->  
        <ext:code code="FAMMEMB" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.111" codeSystemName="v3 Code System RoleCode" displayName="Family Member" />  
        <!--patient-->  
        <ext:asPersonalRelationship>  
          <!-- patient identifier-->  
          <id extension="100543" root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1.2.3.4"/>  
          <administrativeGenderCode nullFlavor="NA" />  
        </ext:asPersonalRelationship>  
      </ext:personalRelationship>  
    </associatedPerson>  
  </associatedEntity>  
</participant>
```

## 11.6 Qualification

### CDA mapping

Element	Definition	Card	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>CDA Data Elements</b>				
Qualification	A list of professional certifications, and certificates recognising having passed a course.	0..1	//ext:asQualifications	
		1..1	//ext:asQualifications/@classCode="QUAL"	
		1..1	//ext:asQualifications/ext:code	Qualifications is a text field, so the text list is entered in the originalText of this element.

# Appendix A. Complex data type mappings to CDA (R2)

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how complex data types referred to in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

## A.1 Identifier

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [Identifier](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

In addition to examples provided in this implementation guide some guidance on representation of common identifiers in CDA is provided by [Representation of Common Australian Identifiers in v2 and CDA \[HI2011\]](#) and [Common - Clinical Document \[DH2019a\]](#).

## CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>Identifier</b>	A technical identifier - identifies some entity uniquely and unambiguously.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	<a href="#">Element</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p>In CDA it is possible that the identifier is formed such that the system and value are both part of the value of the root attribute. In this circumstance the extension attribute should not be instantiated.</p> <p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If the identifier element is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson or Device it is expected to be instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/@classCode="IDENT". See &lt;Entity Identifier&gt; for available attributes.</p> <p>The identifier element may be instantiated as //id.</p>
<b>Identifier &gt; use</b>	The purpose of this identifier.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
<b>Identifier &gt; type</b>	A coded type for the identifier that can be used to determine which identifier to use for a specific purpose.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:code	<p><a href="#">Identifier Type Codes (extensible)</a></p> <p>This element is only available if the identifier is instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/@classCode="IDENT".</p>
<b>Identifier &gt; system</b>	Establishes the namespace for the value - that is, a URL that describes a set values that are unique.	0..1	<a href="#">uri</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If the identifier element is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson or Device this is expected to be instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@root.</p> <p>The identifier system may be instantiated as //id/@root.</p>
<b>Identifier &gt; value</b>	The portion of the identifier typically relevant to the user and which is unique within the context of the system.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If the identifier element is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson or Device this is expected to be instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@extension.</p> <p>The identifier value may be instantiated as //id/@extension.</p>
<b>Identifier &gt; period</b>	Time period during which identifier is/was valid for use.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Identifier > assigner	Organization that issued/manages the identifier.	0..1	<a href="#">Reference (Organization)</a>	See: instantiation choices	<b>instantiation choices:</b>  If the identifier element is for a Patient, Practitioner, PractitionerRole, Organization, RelatedPerson or Device this is expected to be instantiated as //ext:asEntityIdentifier/ext:id/@assigningAuthorityName.  The identifier value may be instantiated as //id/@assigningAuthorityName.

## Example A.1. Identifier

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- subject -->  
<recordTarget>  
  <!-- subject (Patient) -->  
  <patientRole>  
    <patient>  
      <administrativeGenderCode></administrativeGenderCode>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as an Australian IHI -->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.type.text=IHI,  
        identifier.value=8003600200002222,  
        identifier.system=http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/id/hi/ih/1.0 -->  
        <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="IHI" root="1.2.36.1.2001.0.8003600200002222" />  
        <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">  
          <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>  
        </ext:assigningGeographicArea>  
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as an Institution Medical Record-->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.assigner=Croydon GP Centre,  
        identifier.value=542181,  
        identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.29.8003621566684455 -->  
        <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.29.8003621566684455" extension="542181" assigningAuthorityName="Croydon GP Centre" />  
        <!-- Patient.identifier.type -->  
        <ext:code code="MR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" />  
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as a Medicare Number -->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.5001.1.0.7,  
        identifier.value=123456789,  
        identifier.assigner=Medicare Card Number -->  
        <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Card Number"  
          root="1.2.36.1.5001.1.0.7" extension="1234567892" />  
        <ext:code code="MO" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"  
          codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" displayName="Patient's Medicare number" />  
        <!-- Identifier.period is not available in an asEntityIdentifier class -->  
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as a DVA Number -->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270091,  
        identifier.value=NBUR9080,  
        identifier.assigner=Department of Veterans' Affairs -->  
        <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Department of Veterans' Affairs"  
          root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270091" extension="NBUR9080" />  
        <ext:code code="DVG" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.1.203"  
          codeSystemName="HL7V2Table0203IdentifierTypeAUExtended" displayName="DVA Gold Card Number" />  
        <!-- Identifier.period is not available in an asEntityIdentifier class -->  
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
  
      <!-- Patient.identifier as a Healthcare card number -->  
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
        <!-- identifier.system=urn:oid:2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270098,
```

```
        identifier.value=307111942H,
        identifier.assigner=Centrelink customer reference number -->
<ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Centrelink customer reference number"
root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.270098" extension="307111942H"/>
<ext:code code="HC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"
codeSystemName="Identifier Type (HL7)" displayName="Health Card Number"/>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>

    </patient>
</patientRole>
</recordTarget>

<author>
<time value="200911031647+1000"/>
<!-- author (PractitionerRole) --&gt;
&lt;assignedAuthor&gt;
    &lt;!-- PractitionerRole.id --&gt;
    &lt;id root="86d729b8-72d2-460a-a64c-489a51607450"/&gt;
    &lt;!-- PractitionerRole.practitioner(Practitioner) --&gt;
    &lt;assignedPerson&gt;
        &lt;!-- Practitioner.identifier as an Australian HPI-I --&gt;
        &lt;ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT"&gt;
            &lt;!-- identifier.value=8003610537409456,
            identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0,
            identifier.assigner=HPI-I --&gt;
            &lt;ext:id assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"
root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003610537409456"/&gt;
            &lt;ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC"&gt;
                &lt;ext:name&gt;National Identifier&lt;/ext:name&gt;
            &lt;/ext:assigningGeographicArea&gt;
        &lt;/ext:asEntityIdentifier&gt;
    &lt;/assignedPerson&gt;
    &lt;!-- PractitionerRole.identifier as an ABN scoped provider identifier --&gt;
    &lt;ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT"&gt;
        &lt;!-- identifier.value=8003610537409456,
        identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0,
        identifier.assigner=HPI-I --&gt;
        &lt;ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Albion Hospital",
root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.70.51824753556"
extension="peterwinslow44"/&gt;
        &lt;!-- identifier.type --&gt;
        &lt;ext:code code="EI"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.18.108"
codeSystemName="v2 Identifier Type"
displayName="Employee number"/&gt;
    &lt;/ext:asEntityIdentifier&gt;
    &lt;/assignedPerson&gt;
&lt;/assignedAuthor&gt;
<!--PractitionerRole.organization (Organization)--&gt;
&lt;representedOrganization&gt;
    &lt;!-- Organization.name --&gt;
    &lt;name&gt;Albion Hospital&lt;/name&gt;
    &lt;!--Organization.identifier as an ABN--&gt;
    &lt;ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT"&gt;
        &lt;!-- identifier.value=51824754455,
        identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36,
        identifier.assigner=ABN --&gt;
        &lt;ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455" assigningAuthorityName="ABN"/&gt;
        &lt;!-- identifier.type --&gt;
        &lt;ext:code code="XX"
codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" /&gt;
    &lt;/ext:asEntityIdentifier&gt;
&lt;/representedOrganization&gt;</pre>
```

```
</author>

<custodian>
  <!-- custodian (Organization)-->
  <assignedCustodian>
    <representedCustodianOrganization>
      <!-- Organization.id-->
      <id root="d0455def-ff37-4ebe-97fb-52db7224b148"/>
      <!-- Organization.identifier as a Laboratory NATA Identifier -->
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
        <!-- identifier.system.value=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.12,
        identifier.value=2184,
        identifier.assigner=NATA -->
        <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="NATA"
          root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.12" extension="2184"/>
        <!-- identifier.type -->
        <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    </representedCustodianOrganization>
  </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>

<!--DiagnosticReport.basedOn-->
<inFulfillmentOf typeCode="FLFS">
  <!--ProcedureRequest-->
  <order classCode="ACT" moodCode="RQO">
    <!-- ProcedureRequest.identifier
    identifier.system=urn:oid:1.2.36.1.2001.1005.52.8003621566684455, identifier.value=123451 -->
    <id extension="123451" root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.52.8003621566684455" />
  </order>
</inFulfillmentOf>
```

## A.2 HumanName

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [HumanName](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>HumanName</b>	A human's name with the ability to identify parts and usage.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	<a href="#">Element</a>	//name	Name <b>SHALL</b> have at least text or family or given instantiated.  In CDA a full text representation of a name is not to be included in the same instance as a structured representation with the same name parts. Either the free text representation or a name with structure (e.g. name/family or name/given) should be provided but not both.
<b>HumanName &gt; use</b>	Identifies the purpose for this name.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//name/@use	<a href="#">Common Person Name Use (required)</a>
<b>HumanName &gt; text</b>	A full text representation of the name.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//name	
<b>HumanName &gt; family</b>	The part of a name that links to the genealogy. In some cultures (e.g. Eritrea) the family name of a son is the first name of his father.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//name/family	
<b>HumanName &gt; given</b>	Given name.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	//name/given	
<b>HumanName &gt; prefix</b>	Part of the name that is acquired as a title due to academic, legal, employment or nobility status, etc. and that appears at the start of the name.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	//name/prefix	Prefix values can be populated as described in <a href="#">AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare [SA2014a]</a> , 4.4.2 Name Title.
<b>HumanName &gt; suffix</b>	Part of the name that is acquired as a title due to academic, legal, employment or nobility status, etc. and that appears at the end of the name.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	//name/suffix	Suffix values can be populated as described in <a href="#">AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare [SA2014a]</a> , 4.5.3.2 Name Suffix.
<b>HumanName &gt; period</b>	Indicates the period of time when this name was valid for the named person.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	//name/validTime	See <time> for available attributes.

## Example A.2. HumanName

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- HumanName where use=official -->  
<name use="C">  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>Adam</given>  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>A.</given>  
  <!-- HumanName.family -->  
  <family>Everyman</family>  
</name>  
  
<!-- HumanName where use=official -->  
<name use="C">  
  <!-- HumanName.text -->  
  Adam A. Everyman  
</name>  
  
<!-- HumanName where use=usual -->  
<name use="I">  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>Damo</given>  
</name>  
  
<!-- HumanName where use=old -->  
<name use="DN">  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>Adam</given>  
  <!-- HumanName.given -->  
  <given>A.</given>  
  <!-- HumanName.family -->  
  <family>Adamson</family>  
  <!-- HumanName.period -->  
  <validTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">  
    <low value="01012001" />  
    <high value="01012012" />  
  </validTime>  
</name>
```

## A.3 Address

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [Address](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Address	An address expressed using postal conventions (as opposed to GPS or other location definition formats). This data type may be used to convey addresses for use in delivering mail as well as for visiting locations which might not be valid for mail delivery. There are a variety of postal address formats defined around the world.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	<a href="#">Element</a>	//addr	
Address > <b>use</b>	The purpose of this address.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//addr/@use	<a href="#">Address Use HL7 v3 (required)</a> addr/@use may be used to carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes.
Address > <b>type</b>	Distinguishes between physical addresses (those you can visit) and mailing addresses (e.g. PO Boxes and care-of addresses). Most addresses are both.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//addr/@use	<a href="#">Address Type HL7 v3 (required)</a> addr/@use may be used to carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes.
Address > <b>text</b>	A full text representation of the address.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr	The expectation is that this is free text.
Address > <b>line</b>	This component contains the house number, apartment number, street name, street direction, P.O. Box number, delivery hints, and similar address information.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/streetAddressLine	
Address > <b>city</b>	The name of the city, town, village or other community or delivery center.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/city	
Address > <b>district</b>	The name of the administrative area (county).	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/county	
Address > <b>state</b>	Sub-unit of a country with limited sovereignty in a federally organized country. A code may be used if codes are in common use (i.e. US 2 letter state codes).	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/state	
Address > <b>postalCode</b>	A postal code designating a region defined by the postal service.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/postalCode	
Address > <b>country</b>	Country - a nation as commonly understood or generally accepted.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/country	<a href="#">Iso 3166 Part 1: 2 Letter Codes (preferred)</a>
Address > <b>period</b>	Time period when address was/is in use.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	//addr/useablePeriod	

### Example A.3. Address

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- Address where use=work and type=postal -->  
<addr use="PST WP">  
  <!--Address.text-->  
  1050 W Wishard Blvd  
  RG  
  5th floor  
  Indianapolis, IN 46240  
  <!--Address.line-->  
  <streetAddressLine>1050 W Wishard Blvd</streetAddressLine>  
  <!--Address.line-->  
  <streetAddressLine>RG 5th floor</streetAddressLine>  
  <!--Address.city-->  
  <city>Indianapolis</city>  
  <!--Address.state-->  
  <state>IN</state>  
  <!--Address.postalCode-->  
  <postalCode>46240</postalCode>  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Address where use=home and type=physical -->  
<addr use="PHYS H">  
  <!--Address.text-->  
  1 Back Lane&#13;&#10;Holmfirth&#13;&#10;HUDDERSFIELD&#13;&#10;HD7 1HQ  
  <!--Address.line-->  
  <streetAddressLine>1 Back Lane</streetAddressLine>  
  <!--Address.city-->  
  <city>Holmfirth</city>  
  <!--Address.district-->  
  <county>HUDDERSFIELD</county>  
  <!--Address.postalCode-->  
  <postalCode>HD7 1HQ</postalCode>  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Address where use=old -->  
<addr use="TMP">  
  <!--Address.line-->  
  <streetAddressLine>Rue Lougoraïa 12, app. 10</streetAddressLine>  
  <!--Address.city-->  
  <city>Korolevo</city>  
  <!--Address.state-->  
  <state>Minsk</state>  
  <!--Address.country-->  
  <country>BELARUS</country>  
  <!--Address.period-->  
  <useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">  
    <low value="01012001" />  
    <high value="01012012" />  
  </useablePeriod>  
</addr>
```

## A.4 Address as Australian Address

This informative appendix provides some guidance on the constrained form of complex data type [Address](#) as [Australian Address](#) published by HL7 Australia. The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>Address</b>	An Australian address expressed using postal conventions (as opposed to GPS or other location definition formats).	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	<a href="#">Element</a>	//addr	addr <b>SHALL</b> have text or one or more line (addr/streetAddressLine).
<b>Address &gt; use</b>	The purpose of this address.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//addr/@use	<a href="#">Address Use HL7 v3 (required)</a> //addr/@use may be used to carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes.
<b>Address &gt; type</b>	Distinguishes between physical addresses (those you can visit) and mailing addresses (e.g. PO Boxes and care-of addresses). Most addresses are both.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//addr/@use	<a href="#">Address Type HL7 v3 (required)</a> //addr/@use may be used to carry more than one value by a space separated list of codes.
<b>Address &gt; text</b>	A full text representation of the address.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr	The expectation is that this is free text.
<b>Address &gt; line</b>	This component contains the house number, apartment number, street name, street direction, P.O. Box number, delivery hints, and similar address information.	0..*	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/streetAddressLine	
<b>Address &gt; city</b>	The name of the city, town, village or other community or delivery center.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/city	
<b>Address &gt; district</b>	The name of the administrative area (county).	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/county	
<b>Address &gt; state</b>	Sub-unit of a country with limited sovereignty in a federally organized country. A code may be used if codes are in common use (i.e. US 2 letter state codes).	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/state	<a href="#">Australian States and Territories (required)</a> This element <b>SHALL</b> be populated with the code e.g. "NT".
<b>Address &gt; postalCode</b>	A postal code designating a region defined by the postal service.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/postalCode	The maximum length of postalCode <b>SHALL</b> be 4.
<b>Address &gt; country</b>	Fixed value if present otherwise assumed to be Australia in this context.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//addr/country	This element <b>SHALL</b> be populated with "AU".
<b>Address &gt; period</b>	Time period when address was/is in use.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	//addr/useablePeriod	
<b>Address &gt; nofixedaddress</b>	No fixed address indicator.	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly, if true, addr <b>SHOULD</b> be equal to "NO FIXED ADDRESS" and addr/@use <b>SHOULD</b> be "PHYS".

## Example A.4. Address

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- Australian Address with no fixed address in Melbourne, VIC-->  
<addr use="PHYS">  
<!--Address.text-->  
NO FIXED ADDRESS  
<!--Address.city-->  
<city>Melbourne</city>  
<!--Address.state-->  
<state>VIC</state>  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Australian Address with only text-->  
<addr use="PHYS">  
<!--Address.text-->  
Level 1, 300 George St, Brisbane, QLD 4000  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Australian Address where use=work and type=postal -->  
<addr use="PST WP">  
<!--Address.line-->  
<streetAddressLine>Northern Territory Office, Department of Addresses, GPO Box 19132110</streetAddressLine>  
<!--Address.city-->  
<city>Darwin</city>  
<!--Address.state-->  
<state>NT</state>  
<!--Address.postalCode-->  
<postalCode>0801</postalCode>  
<!--Address.country-->  
<country>AU</country>  
<!--Address.period-->  
<useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">  
<low value="200311031647+1000" />  
</useablePeriod>  
</addr>  
  
<!-- Australian Address where use=work and type=physical -->  
<addr use="PHYS WP">  
<!--Address.line-->  
<streetAddressLine>5th Floor, Northern Territory House, 223 Mitchell Street</streetAddressLine>  
<!--Address.city-->  
<city>Darwin</city>  
<!--Address.state-->  
<state>NT</state>  
<!--Address.postalCode-->  
<postalCode>0800</postalCode>  
<!--Address.country-->  
<country>AU</country>  
</addr>
```

## A.5 ContactPoint

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [ContactPoint](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
ContactPoint	A human's name with the ability to identify parts and usage.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	<a href="#">Element</a>	//telecom	If value is present, system <b>SHALL</b> be present.
ContactPoint > <b>system</b>	Telecommunications form for contact point - what communications system is required to make use of the contact.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//telecom/@value	<a href="#">HL7 URLScheme (required)</a> Makes up part of the attribute: 'system:value', e.g. 'tel:phone number', 'mailto:email address', 'http:URL', etc.
ContactPoint > <b>value</b>	The actual contact point details, in a form that is meaningful to the designated communication system (i.e. phone number or email address).	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//telecom/@value	Makes up the part of the attribute: 'system:value', e.g. 'tel:phone number', 'mailto:email address', 'http:URL', etc.
ContactPoint > <b>use</b>	Identifies the purpose for the contact point.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//telecom/@use	<a href="#">HL7 TelecommunicationAddressUse (required)</a>
ContactPoint > <b>rank</b>	Specifies a preferred order in which to use a set of contacts. Contacts are ranked with lower values coming before higher values.	0..1	<a href="#">positiveInt</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
ContactPoint > <b>period</b>	Time period when the contact point was/is in use.	0..1	<a href="#">Period</a>	//telecom/usablePeriod	See <time> for available attributes.

### Example A.5. ContactPoint

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- ContactPoint where system=phone, value=+1-(555)555-1212, use=home -->  
<telecom value="tel:+1-(555)555-1212" use="H">  
  <!-- ContactPoint.period -->  
  <useablePeriod xsi:type="IVL_TS">  
    <low value="01012001" />  
    <high value="01012012" />  
  </useablePeriod>  
</telecom>  
  
<!-- ContactPoint where system=phone, value=0712341234, use=home -->  
<telecom use="H" value="tel:0712341234" />  
  
<!-- ContactPoint where system=email, value=sfranklin@mail.com.au, use=work -->  
<telecom use="WP" value="mailto:sfranklin@mail.com.au" />
```

## A.6 Dosage

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [Dosage](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of preferred mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Dosage	Indicates how the medication is/was taken or should be taken by the patient.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	<a href="#">Element</a>	See: instantiation choices	<b>instantiation choices:</b>  When a single instance of dosage is recorded the logical element has no direct mapping; it is implicit in the mapping of the child elements.  When more than one instance of dosage is recorded, each instance of dosage is recorded as a child substanceAdministration, e.g. //substanceAdministration/entryRelationship[dosage]/substanceAdministration[@typeCode="SBADM", @moodCode="INT"].
Dosage > sequence	Indicates the order in which the dosage instructions should be applied or interpreted.	0..1	<a href="#">integer</a>	//entryRelationship[dosage]	This element <b>SHALL NOT</b> be instantiated for a single instance of dosage.  The value of sequenceNumber <b>SHALL</b> be an ordinal number starting at "1" and increasing by "1" for each subsequent instance of dosage.
				//entryRelationship[dosage]/@typeCode="COMP"	
				//entryRelationship[dosage]/sequenceNumber	
Dosage > text	Free text dosage instructions e.g. SIG.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//text	
Dosage > additionalInstruction	Supplemental instruction - e.g. 'with meals'.	0..*	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	Not mapped directly for this model; included implicitly in text, or patientInstruction, or timing, asNeeded.
Dosage > patientInstruction	Instructions in terms that are understood by the patient or consumer.	0..1	<a href="#">string</a>	//text	
Dosage > timing	When medication should be administered.	0..1	<a href="#">Timing</a>	//effectiveTime	See <a href="#">time</a> for available attributes.  Recommended mappings for the complex data type to CDA (R2): <a href="#">Timing</a> .

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Dosage > <b>asNeeded</b>	Indicates whether the Medication is only taken when needed within a specific dosing schedule (Boolean option), or it indicates the precondition for taking the Medication (CodeableConcept).	0..1	<a href="#">boolean</a>   <a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	//precondition	
				//precondition/typeCode="PRCN"	
				//precondition/criterion	
				//precondition/criterion/code	
				//precondition/criterion/code/@code="ASSERTION"	
				//precondition/criterion/code/@codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"	
				//precondition/criterion/value	<a href="#">Clinical Finding (preferred)</a>
Dosage > <b>site</b>	Body site to administer to.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	//approachSiteCode	See <a href="#">code</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">Body Site (required)</a>
Dosage > <b>route</b>	How drug should enter body.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	//routeCode	See <a href="#">code</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">Route of Administration (preferred)</a>
Dosage > <b>method</b>	Technique for administering medication.	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	//ext:methodCode	See <a href="#">code</a> for available attributes. <a href="#">SNOMED CT Administration Method Codes (preferred)</a>
Dosage > <b>dose</b>	Amount of medication per dose.	0..1	<a href="#">Range</a>   <a href="#">SimpleQuantity</a>	//doseQuantity	
Dosage > <b>maxDosePerPeriod</b>	Upper limit on medication per unit of time.	0..1	<a href="#">Ratio</a>	//maxDoseQuantity	
Dosage > <b>maxDosePerAdministration</b>	Upper limit on medication per administration.	0..1	<a href="#">SimpleQuantity</a>	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA however this may be represented by an administration schedule with a maxDosePerAdministration in that administration schedule represented as maxDoseQuantity with a period of a single administration.
Dosage > <b>maxDosePerLifetime</b>	Upper limit on medication per lifetime of the patient.	0..1	<a href="#">SimpleQuantity</a>	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA.  One possible way to represent this concept is to represent an observation with a code equivalent to 'max does per lifetime'.  One possibly way to represent this concept is to represent an instance of dosage with maxDoseQuantity and effectiveTime/high/@value="PINF" thus indicating that the end of the period of administration is positive infinity.
Dosage > <b>rate</b>	Amount of medication per unit of time.	0..1	<a href="#">Ratio</a>   <a href="#">Range</a>   <a href="#">SimpleQuantity</a>	//rateQuantity	

## Example A.6. Dosage

<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->

```
<entry>
  <!-- MedicationStatement - more than one instance of Dosage -->
  <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
    <!-- identifier -->
    <id root="4255b903-6f90-41b8-a71c-8ac0eelebdc3"/>
    <!-- medication.as(medicationCodeableConcept) -->
    <consumable>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <manufacturedMaterial>
          <code code="6006011000036102"
            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1004.100"
            displayName="Lasix (frusemide 40 mg) tablet: uncoated, 1 tablet">
            <originalText>Lasix (frusemide 40 mg)
              tablet</originalText>
          </code>
        </manufacturedMaterial>
      </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>

    <!-- Dosage to indicate asNeeded with a condition-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP" >
      <!-- sequence -->
      <sequenceNumber value="1"/>
      <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT" >
        <consumable>
          <manufacturedProduct>
            <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA" />
          </manufacturedProduct>
        </consumable>
        <!-- asNeededCodeableConcept - instantiated as prn with specified condition -->
        <precondition typeCode="PRCN" >
          <criterion>
            <code code="ASSERTION"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"/>
            <!-- joint pain -->
            <value xsi:type="CD" code="57676002"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
              displayName="Joint pain"/>
          </criterion>
        </precondition>
      </substanceAdministration>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!-- Dosage to indicate timing -->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP" >
      <!-- sequence -->
      <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
      <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT" >
        <!-- additionalInstruction / patientInstruction -->
        <text>Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes</text>
        <!-- timing -->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A">
          <phase>
            <low value="198701010800" inclusive="true"/>
            <width value="10" unit="min"/>
          </phase>
        </effectiveTime>
      </substanceAdministration>
    </entryRelationship>
  </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

```
<period value="1" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- route -->
<routeCode code="C38288" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1" codeSystemName="NCI Thesaurus" displayName="Oral"/>
<!-- dose -->
<doseQuantity value="1" />
<consumable>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA" />
  </manufacturedProduct>
</consumable>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entry>

<entry>
  <!-- MedicationStatement - single instance of Dosage -->
  <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN" >
    <!-- identifier -->
    <id root="ab6d45ff-fd58-4f38-8009-aelaa84a4f43"/>
    <!-- method -->
    <ext:methodCode code="421134003" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Inhale" />
    <!-- route -->
    <routeCode code="ORNEB" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.112" codeSystemName="Route Code" displayName="Inhalation, nebulization, oral"/>
    <!-- dose -->
    <doseQuantity value="1" />
    <!-- maxDosePerPeriod -->
    <maxDoseQuantity>
      <numerator value="1" />
      <denominator value="1" unit="h" />
    </maxDoseQuantity>
    <administrationUnitCode code="415215001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96" codeSystemName="SNOMED CT" displayName="Puff" />
    <!-- medication.as(medicationCodeableConcept) -->
    <consumable>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <manufacturedMaterial>
          <code code="7113011000036100" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1004.100"
            displayName="Spiriva (tiotropium (as bromide monohydrate) 18 microgram) inhalation: powder for, 1 capsule">
            <originalText>Spiriva (tiotropium bromide 18mg per inhalant)</originalText>
          </code>
        </manufacturedMaterial>
      </manufacturedProduct>
    </consumable>
    <!-- asNeededBoolean=true - instantiated as prn with no specified condition -->
    <precondition typeCode="PRCN" >
      <criterion>
        <code code="ASSERTION" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4" />
        <value xsi:type="CD" nullFlavor="NI" />
      </criterion>
    </precondition>
  </substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

## A.7 Timing

This informative appendix provides some guidance on how the complex data type [Timing](#), referenced in the body of this specification can map to CDA (R2). The mappings provided are a set of possible mappings and do not represent conformance requirements.

### CDA mapping

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
<b>Timing</b>	Specifies an event that may occur multiple times. Timing schedules are used to record when things are planned, expected or requested to occur. The most common usage is in dosage instructions for medications. They are also used when planning care of various kinds, and may be used for reporting the schedule to which past regular activities were carried out.	Cardinality comes from linking parent.	<a href="#">Element</a>	//effectiveTime	See <time> for available attributes.
Timing > event	Identifies specific times when the event occurs.	0..1	<a href="#">dateTime</a>	//effectiveTime/@value	
Timing > repeat	A set of rules that describe when the event is scheduled.	0..1	<a href="#">Element</a>	//effectiveTime/@xsi:type	<p>Not mapped directly; implicit in the instantiation of the xsi:type, e.g. PIVL_TS or EIVL_TS, and the mapping of the child elements.</p> <p>If duration is present, durationUnit <b>SHALL</b> be present.</p> <p>If timeOfDay is present, when <b>SHALL NOT</b> be present.</p> <p>If period is present, periodUnit <b>SHALL</b> be present.</p> <p>duration <b>SHALL</b> be a non-negative value.</p> <p>period <b>SHALL</b> be a non-negative value.</p> <p>If periodMax is present, period <b>SHALL</b> be present.</p> <p>If offset is present, when <b>SHALL</b> be present.</p>
Timing > repeat > bounds	Either a duration for the length of the timing schedule, a range of possible length, or outer bounds for start and/or end limits of the timing schedule.	0..1	<a href="#">Duration</a>   <a href="#">Range</a>   <a href="#">Period</a>	See: instantiation choices	<p>effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "IVL_TS".</p> <p><b>instantiation choices:</b></p> <p>If bounds is a <a href="#">Duration</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //effectiveTime/width.</p> <p>If bounds is a <a href="#">Range</a> then it is expected to be included in Dosage as text, or additionalInstruction, or patientInstruction as appropriate.</p> <p>If bounds is a <a href="#">Period</a> then it is expected to be instantiated as //effectiveTime/period.</p>
Timing > repeat > count	A total count of the desired number of repetitions.	0..1	<a href="#">integer</a>	//repeatNumber/@value	count <b>SHALL</b> only be instantiated in the repeatNumber element of the Dosage substanceAdministration act where the moodCode is "INT" or "PLAN".

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Timing > repeat > <b>countMax</b>	A maximum value for the count of the desired repetitions (e.g. do something 6-8 times).	0..1	<a href="#">integer</a>	//repeatNumber/high/@value	
Timing > repeat > <b>duration</b>	How long this thing happens for when it happens.	0..1	<a href="#">decimal</a>	//effectiveTime/phase/width/@value	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHOULD</b> be "PIVL_TS".
Timing > repeat > <b>durationMax</b>	The upper limit of how long this thing happens for when it happens.	0..1	<a href="#">decimal</a>	n/a	This logical element has no mapping to CDA.
Timing > repeat > <b>durationUnit</b>	The units of time for the duration, in UCUM units.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	//effectiveTime/phase/width/@unit	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHOULD</b> be "PIVL_TS".
Timing > repeat > <b>frequency</b>	The number of times to repeat the action within the specified period / period range (i.e. both period and periodMax provided).	0..1	<a href="#">integer</a>	//effectiveTime/frequency	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "PIVL_TS".
				//effectiveTime/frequency/numerator	frequency is expressed as the numerator (with an xsi:type of "INT") and period is expressed in CDA as the denominator.  frequency is often not included in CDA as a separate element but addressed by adjusting the values of period and periodUnit to take into account frequency.
Timing > repeat > <b>frequencyMax</b>	If present, indicates that the frequency is a range - so to repeat between [frequency] and [frequencyMax] times within the period or period range.	0..1	<a href="#">integer</a>	//effectiveTime/phase	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHOULD</b> be "PIVL_TS".
Timing > repeat > <b>period</b>	Indicates the duration of time over which repetitions are to occur; e.g. to express '3 times per day', 3 would be the frequency and '1 day' would be the period.	0..1	<a href="#">decimal</a>	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHOULD</b> be "PIVL_TS".  <b>instantiation choices:</b>  May be represented by //effectiveTime/phase or //effectiveTime/period.
Timing > repeat > <b>periodMax</b>	If present, indicates that the period is a range from [period] to [periodMax], allowing expressing concepts such as 'do this once every 3-5 days.'	0..1	<a href="#">decimal</a>	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHOULD</b> be "PIVL_TS".  <b>instantiation choices:</b>  May be represented by //effectiveTime/phase or //effectiveTime/period/high.
Timing > repeat > <b>periodUnit</b>	The units of time for the period in UCUM units.	0..1	<a href="#">code</a>	See: instantiation choices	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHOULD</b> be "PIVL_TS".  <b>instantiation choices:</b>  May be represented by //effectiveTime/phase/@unit or //effectiveTime/period/low/@unit or //effectiveTime/period/high/@unit.
Timing > repeat > <b>dayOfWeek</b>	If one or more days of week is provided, then the action happens only on the specified day(s).	0..*	<a href="#">code</a>	//effectiveTime/@xsi:type="PIVL_TS"	The value between low and high represents the day of the week by selecting a known day. For example a low/@value of 20001202 and a high/@value of 20001203 represents Saturday by setting the period to the whole of the Saturday of the 2nd of December 2000.
				//effectiveTime/@alignment="DW"	
				//effectiveTime/phase	
				//effectiveTime/phase/low/@value	
				//effectiveTime/phase/low/@inclusive="true"	
				//effectiveTime/phase/high/@value	
				//effectiveTime/phase/high/@inclusive="false"	

Element	Element description	Card	Element type	CDA schema element	Constraints and comments
Timing > repeat > timeOfDay	Specified time of day for action to take place.	0..*	<a href="#">time</a>	//effectiveTime/ <b>phase</b>	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHOULD</b> be "PIVL_TS".
				//effectiveTime/phase/ <b>low</b>	
				//effectiveTime/phase/low/@value	
Timing > repeat > when	Real world events that the occurrence of the event should be tied to.	0..*	<a href="#">code</a>	//effectiveTime/ <b>event</b>	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "EIVL_TS". This CDA schema element is of type CodedSimpleValue (CS). <a href="#">EventTiming (required)</a>
Timing > repeat > offset	The number of minutes from the event. If the event code does not indicate whether the minutes is before or after the event, then the offset is assumed to be after the event.	0..1	<a href="#">unsignedInt</a>	//effectiveTime/ <b>offset</b>	effectiveTime/@xsi:type <b>SHALL</b> be "EIVL_TS".
Timing > code	A code for the timing schedule. Some codes such as BID are ubiquitous, but many institutions define their own additional codes. If a code is provided, the code is understood to be a complete statement of whatever is specified in the structured timing data, and either the code or the data may be used to interpret the Timing, with the exception that .repeat.bounds still applies over the code (and is not contained in the code).	0..1	<a href="#">CodeableConcept</a>	n/a	Not directly supported in CDA; implied by frequency.

## Example A.7. Timing

```
<!-- These example fragments are illustrative only. They cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->  
  
<!-- Dosage to indicate timing -->  
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">  
    <!-- sequence -->  
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/>  
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="INT">  
        <!-- additionalInstruction / patientInstruction -->  
        <text>Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes</text>  
        <!-- timing, 1st administered 2009-09-01 at 1:18am and to be taken every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes -->  
        <!-- event -->  
        <effectiveTime value="200509010118"/>  
        <!-- repeat -->  
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A">  
            <phase>  
                <!-- boundsPeriod / timeOfDay -->  
                <low value="200509020800" inclusive="true"/>  
                <!-- duration and durationUnit -->  
                <width value="10" unit="min"/>  
            </phase>  
            <!-- frequency=1, period=1 -->  
            <period value="1" unit="d"/>  
        </effectiveTime>  
        <consumable>  
            <manufacturedProduct>  
                <manufacturedMaterial nullFlavor="NA"/>  
            </manufacturedProduct>  
        </consumable>  
    </substanceAdministration>  
</entryRelationship>  
  
<entry>  
    <!-- MedicationStatement - common timing representations - this is not a meaningful example and is there to show common instantiations  
and their corresponding code -->  
    <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">  
        <!--identifier-->  
        <id root="7e5cc411-c248-4d5d-b333-257f16f9136c"/>  
        <!-- common timing representations taken from https://docs.google.com/document/d/1Y0Z458o_MrR2aPnpx6EygO6hpI88B195esjRWZ0agtY/edit -->  
        <!-- b.i.d twice a day -->  
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true" operator="A">  
            <!-- frequency=2, period=1, periodUnit=d -->  
            <period value="0.5" unit="d"/>  
        </effectiveTime>  
        <!-- q12h Every 12 hours -->  
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"  
            operator="A">  
            <!-- frequency=1, period=12, periodUnit=h -->  
            <period value="12" unit="h"/>  
        </effectiveTime>  
        <!-- t.i.d Three times a day, at times determined by the person administering the medication-->  
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"  
            operator="A">  
            <!-- frequency=3, period=1, periodUnit=d -->  
            <period value="0.3333" unit="d"/>  
        </effectiveTime>  
        <!-- q8h Every 8 hours -->
```

```
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=8, periodUnit=h -->
  <period value="8" unit="h"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- qid four times daily-->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=4, period=1, periodUnit=d -->
  <period value="0.25" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- q6h Every 6 hours -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=6, periodUnit=h -->
  <period value="6" unit="h"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- qd daily -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="true"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=1, periodUnit=d -->
  <period value="1" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- q24h Every 24 hours -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=24, periodUnit=h -->
  <period value="24" unit="h"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- qod Every other day -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=2, periodUnit=d -->
  <period value="2" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- qm Once a month -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency=1, period=1, periodUnit=mo -->
  <period value="1" unit="m"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- q4-6h Every 4 to 6 hours (preferred) -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <!-- frequency (where frequency=1)-->
  <period xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
    <!-- period and periodUnit -->
    <low value="4" unit="h" />
    <!-- periodMax and periodUnit -->
    <high value="6" unit="h" />
  </period>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- q4-6h Every 4 to 6 hours (alternate) -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" institutionSpecified="false"
  operator="A">
  <period xsi:type="PPD_PQ" value="5" unit="h">
    <standardDeviation value="1" unit="h"/>
  </period>
</effectiveTime>
<!!-- qam In the morning -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="ACM"/>
```

```
</effectiveTime>
<!-- qam Every day at 8 in the morning for 10 minutes -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <phase>
    <!-- boundsPeriod / timeOfDay -->
    <low value="198701010800" inclusive="true"/>
    <!-- duration and durationUnit -->
    <width value="10" unit="min"/>
  </phase>
  <period value="1" unit="d"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- 1 hour after meal -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="PC"/>
  <!-- offset -->
  <offset>
    <low value="1" unit="h" />
  </offset>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- before dinner -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="ACV"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- before lunch -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="ACD"/>
</effectiveTime>
<!-- every evening -->
<effectiveTime xsi:type="EIVL_TS" operator="A">
  <!-- when using code from TimingEvent value set (2.16.840.1.113883.5.139) -->
  <event code="ICV"/>
</effectiveTime>
<effectiveTime xsi:type="PIVL_TS" alignment="DW" operator="A">
  <!-- every Saturday -->
  <phase>
    <low value="20001202" inclusive="true"/>
    <high value="20001203" inclusive="false"/>
  </phase>
  <period value="1" unit="wk"/>
</effectiveTime>
<consumable>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedMaterial>
      <code nullFlavor="NA"/>
    </manufacturedMaterial>
  </manufacturedProduct>
</consumable>
</substanceAdministration>
</entry>
```

## Appendix B. Examples

This informative appendix provides some examples that conform to the conformance requirements specified within this implementation guide.

DRAFT

## B.1 Event Summary example 1

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

### Example B.1. Event Summary example 1

<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->

```
<ClinicalDocument xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"  
    xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org:v3-example"  
    xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"  
    xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"  
    xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3 ../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">  
<typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>  
    <!-- ClinicalDocument templateId -->  
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033" extension="1.0"/>  
    <!--Event Summary document model templateId -->  
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020" extension="1.0"/>  
    <!--CDA Rendering Specification templateId-->  
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.226" extension="1.0"/>  
    <!--ClinicalDocument.id-->  
    <id root="830812d3-8f60-4549-8b34-c4b315f7ce33" />  
    <!-- Composition.type -->  
    <code code="34133-9"  
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"  
        codeSystemName="LOINC"  
        displayName="Summary of episode note" />  
    <!-- Composition.title -->  
    <title>Event Summary</title>  
    <effectiveTime value="20180719" />  
    <confidentialityCode nullFlavor="NA" />  
    <languageCode code="en-AU" />  
    <!--Composition.identifier-->  
    <setId root="6C6BA56C-BC92-11DE-A170-D85556D89593" />  
    <!-- Composition.status -->  
    <ext:completionCode code="F"  
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101.104.20104"  
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Document Status Values"  
        displayName="Final" />  
  
    <!-- Composition.subject :: recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) -->  
<recordTarget>  
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100004" extension="1.0"/>  
    <patientRole>  
        <id root="df1cf480-a2ce-419a-891e-16d7e863c6a1" />  
        <patient>  
            <!-- Patient.name -->  
            <name>  
                <given>Iliana</given>  
                <family>Iglesias</family>  
            </name>  
            <!-- Patient.gender -->  
            <administrativeGenderCode code="other"  
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.2"  
                codeSystemName="AdministrativeGender"  
                displayName="Other" />  
            <!--Patient.birthDate-->  
            <birthTime value="19600820" />  
            <!-- Patient.Indigenous-Status (extension) -->  
            <ethnicGroupCode code="9" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1004.200.10012"  
                codeSystemName="Australian Indigenous Status"  
                displayName="Not stated/inadequately described" />  
            <!-- Patient.identifier -->  
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">  
                <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="IHI"  
                    root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003608833357361" />  
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">  
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>  
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>  
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>  
        </patient>  
    <!--providerOrganization (Base Organization)-->  
    <providerOrganization>  
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100034" extension="1.0"/>  
        <id root="79e151f5-4138-4a51-8d87-931f8edb837c" />  
        <!-- Organization.name -->  
        <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>  
        <!-- Organization.telecom -->  
        <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556" />  
        <!-- Organization.address -->  
        <addr use="PST">  
            <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>  
            <city>Strahan</city>  
            <state>TAS</state>  
            <postalCode>7468</postalCode>  
            <country>AU</country>  
        </addr>  
        <!-- Organization.identifier -->  
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
```

```
<ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
<ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</providerOrganization>
</patientRole>
</recordTarget>

<!-- Composition.author :: author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) -->
<author>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006" extension="1.0"/>
    <!-- Composition.date -->
    <time value="20180719"/>
    <assignedAuthor>
        <id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.code -->
        <code code="253111"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
            displayName="General Practitioner">
            <originalText>GP</originalText>
        </code>
        <!-- Practitioner.telecom -->
        <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:bhelpman@example.devonportgp.com.au"/>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.practitioner -->
        <assignedPerson>
            <!-- assignedPerson (Base Practitioner) -->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100040" extension="1.0"/>
            <!-- Practitioner.name -->
            <name use="L">
                <given>Barry</given>
                <family>Helpman</family>
                <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
            </name>
            <!-- PractitionerRole.identifier or Practitioner.identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
                    assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
                    extension="5544887B"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
                <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
                <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
                </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </assignedPerson>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.organization -->
        <representedOrganization>
            <!-- representedOrganization (Base Organization) -->
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039" extension="1.0"/>
            <id root="42c9e70e-a026-48b8-80d6-4d17a11b4ee6"/>
            <!-- Organization.name -->
            <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
            <!-- Organization.telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:reception@example.dfmfc.com.au"/>
            <telecom use="WP" value="fax:0385435557"/>
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
            <!-- Organization.address -->
            <addr use="PST">
                <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Strahan</city>
                <state>TAS</state>
                <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
                <country>Australia</country>
            </addr>
            <!-- Organization.identifier -->
            <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
                <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
                    assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
                <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </representedOrganization>
    </assignedAuthor>
</author>

<!-- custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier) -->
<custodian>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002" extension="1.0"/>
    <assignedCustodian>
        <representedCustodianOrganization>
            <id root="42c9e70e-a026-48b8-80d6-4d17a11b4ee6"/>
            <!-- Organization.name -->
            <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
            <!-- Organization.telecom -->
            <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
            <!-- Organization.address -->
            <addr use="PST">
                <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
                <city>Strahan</city>
                <state>TAS</state>
                <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
                <country>AU</country>
            </addr>
            <!-- Organization.identifier -->

```

```

<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
    <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
        assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
    <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</representedCustodianOrganization>
</assignedCustodian>
</custodian>

<!-- attester (Legal Attester)-->
<legalAuthenticator>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100012" extension="1.0"/>
    <time value="20180719"/>
    <signatureCode code="S"/>
    <assignedEntity>
        <!-- attester (Legal Attester) indicating same entity as the author via the same id -->
        <id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
    <assignedPerson>
        <name>
            <given>Barry</given>
            <family>Helpman</family>
            <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
        </name>
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
                assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
            <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
                extension="5544887B"
                assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
            <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
            <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
                <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
            </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
        </assignedPerson>
        </assignedEntity>
    </legalAuthenticator>

<!-- Patient.generalPractitioner (Base Practitioner) -->
<participant typeCode="PART">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037" extension="1.0"/>
    <functionCode code="PCP"/>
    <associatedEntity classCode="PROV">
        <id root="ad9f414d-0034-4alc-998a-bc01cc7e5619"/>
        <associatedPerson>
            <!-- Practitioner.name -->
            <name>
                <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
                <given>Francis</given>
                <family>Smith</family>
            </name>
            </associatedPerson>
        </associatedEntity>
    </participant>

<!-- Composition.encounter -->
<componentOf>
<!--encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)-->
    <encompassingEncounter>
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="3a9c6d4b-9e82-4096-b88c-100b2e824961"/>
        <!--Encounter.period-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
            <low value="20180719090000+1000"/>
            <high value="20180719091500+1000"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>

<component>
    <structuredBody>

        <!-- Administrative Observations -->
        <component>
            <section>
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000" extension="1.0"/>
                <id root="bd166803-0582-434d-9b76-6d0f9d793809"/>
                <!-- section.code -->
                <code code="102.16080"
                    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                    codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                    displayName="Administrative Observations"/>
                <!-- section.title -->
                <title>Administrative Observations</title>
                <!-- Patient.date-accuracy-indicator (extension)-->
                <entry>
                    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                        <id root="d854d684-de46-437f-997e-bb7a73a08b83"/>
                        <code code="102.16234" codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                            displayName="Date of Birth Accuracy Indicator"/>
                        <value code="AAE" xsi:type="CS"/>
                    </observation>
                </entry>
            </section>
        </component>
    </structuredBody>

```

```
<!--Practitioner.qualification-->
<ext:coverage2>
  <ext:templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038" extension="1.0"/>
  <ext:entitlement classCode="COV" moodCode="EVN">
    <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.56" extension="MED0000932850"
      assigningAuthorityName="AHPRA"/>
    <ext:code code="253111" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
      displayName="General Medical Practitioner">
      <originalText>AHPRA qualification for General Practitioner</originalText>
    </ext:code>
    <ext:participant>
      <ext:participantRole>
        <!-- matching technical id for the Practitioner entity -->
        <ext:id root="d2660da4-6021-4adb-b424-53c76af5cca5"/>
      </ext:participantRole>
    </ext:participant>
  </ext:entitlement>
</ext:coverage2>
</section>
</component>

<!-- section (Event Overview) -->
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="64c31179-53c2-42c2-a1d8-0288b77c4bb6"/>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).code -->
    <code code="101.16672"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Event Overview"/>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).title -->
    <title>Event Details</title>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
      <paragraph styleCode="bold">Presentation date</paragraph>: 19 July 2018 09:00
      <paragraph styleCode="bold">Encounter Description</paragraph>: <paragraph>Patient presented with a headache, fever, sore throat. Patient advised she has no known allergies and was prescribed amoxicillin 500mg 3/day for 5 days, and augmentin forte 1 tablet twice a day for five days during this event. Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one tablet during the event, and during the event they were given one tablet to take home.</paragraph>
    </text>
    <!--encounter (Summary of Encounter for an Event)-->
    <entry>
      <encounter classCode="ENC" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="3a9c6d4b-9e82-4096-b88c-100b2e824961"/>
        <!--Encounter.encounter-description-->
        <text>Patient presented with a headache, fever, sore throat.
          Patient advised she has no known allergies and was prescribed amoxicillin 500mg 3/day for 5 days, and augmentin forte 1 tablet twice a day for five days during this event. Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one tablet during the event, and during the event they were given one tablet to take home.</text>
        <!--Encounter.status-->
        <statusCode code="finished"/>
        <!--Encounter.period-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
          <low value="20180719090000+1000"/>
          <high value="20180719091500+1000"/>
        </effectiveTime>
      </encounter>
    </entry>
  </section>
</component>

<!-- section (Allergies) -->
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="ad9bc4ce-36fa-4792-af28-a53a03c9a200"/>
    <!-- section (Allergies).code -->
    <code code="48765-2"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC"
      displayName="Allergies &or adverse reactions"/>
    <!-- section (Allergies).title -->
    <title>Allergies and Adverse Reactions</title>
    <!-- section (Allergies).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
      <paragraph>No known allergies.</paragraph>
    </text>
    <!--observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)-->
    <entry>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100014" extension="1.0"/>
        <code code="102.05517"
          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
          displayName="Adverse Reaction">
        </code>
        <!--AllergyIntolerance.code-->
        <value xsi:type="CD"
          code="716186003"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="No known allergy">
          <originalText>No known allergies</originalText>
        </value>
        <!--AllergyIntolerance.clinical-Status-->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
```

```
<code code="103.32013"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Clinical Status"/>
<value code="active"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.118"
      codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceClinicalStatus"
      displayName="Active"
      xsi:type="CD"/>
</observation>
<!--AllergyIntolerance.verification-Status-->
</entryRelationship>
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="103.32012"
          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
          displayName="Verification Status"/>
    <value code="confirmed"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.116"
          codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceVerificationStatus"
          displayName="Confirmed"
          xsi:type="CD"/>
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</observation>
</entry>
</section>
</component>

<!-- section (Medications) -->
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="275e7d93-37f9-4b67-895b-ab6b5b7627b6"/>
    <!-- section (Medications).code -->
    <code code="10160-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC"
          displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/>
    <!-- section (Medications).title -->
    <title>Medications</title>
    <!-- section (Medications).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7+text+xml">
      <table border="1">
        <caption>Medicines List</caption>
        <thead>
          <tr>
            <th>Medicine</th>
            <th>Directions</th>
            <th>Clinical Indication/Change description</th>
            <th>Status</th>
          </tr>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
          <tr ID="c55f2a65-2b63-4ee2-970e-4779e8722f78">
            <td><content styleCode="bold">amoxicillin</content> 500 mg - capsule</td>
            <td>Take 3 tablets a day for 5 days.</td>
            <td>For headache, fever, sore throat.</td>
            <td>New prescription</td>
          </tr>
          <tr ID="ffad0931-a062-4d74-8cc3-9e8836f51ba3">
            <td><content styleCode="bold">Augmentin Duo Forte</content> 875/125 - tablet</td>
            <td>Take 1 tablet twice a day for 5 days.</td>
            <td>For headache, fever, sore throat.</td>
            <td>New prescription</td>
          </tr>
          <tr ID="ed58490f-903c-4b8b-af6f-d30fad3df7e8">
            <td><content styleCode="bold">sumatriptan</content> 100 mg - tablet</td>
            <td>As required</td>
            <td>For migraine.</td>
            <td>Unchanged</td>
          </tr>
        </tbody>
      </table>
    </text>
    <!-- act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)-->
    <entry>
      <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063" extension="1.0"/>
        <!--List.code-->
        <code code="10160-0"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
              codeSystemName="LOINC"
              displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/></code>
        <!--List.status-->
        <statusCode code="active"/>
        <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
            <id root="dc62bf6a-8843-4a89-9a89-713f686ee8e1"/>
            <!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
            <text>
              <reference value="#c55f2a65-2b63-4ee2-970e-4779e8722f78"/>
            </text>
            <!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
            <statusCode code="new"/>
            <!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
            <consumable>
```

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedMaterial>
    <code code="23551011000036108"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="amoxicillin 500 mg capsule">
      <originalText>amoxicillin 500 mg capsule</originalText>
    </code>
  </manufacturedMaterial>
</manufacturedProduct>
</consumable>
<!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="103.10141"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Clinical Indication">
      <value xsi:type = "CD">
        <originalText>headache, fever and sore throat</originalText>
      </value>
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
<!--List.entry.flag-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="288533004"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="Change values"/>
    <!--List.change-description-->
    <text>Prescription for headache, fever, sore throat</text>
    <value code="prescribed"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
      codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
      displayName="New prescription"
      xsi:type="CD"/>
  </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
<templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
<id root="b438ef4b-d768-4dda-a1b8-092f0ce2279c"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
  <text>
    <reference value="#ffad0931-a062-4d74-8cc3-9e8836f51ba3"/>
  </text>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
  <statusCode code="new"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="6052011000036107"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Augmentin Duo Forte 875/125 film-coated tablet">
          <originalText>Augmentin Duo Forte 875/125 film-coated tablet</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <code code="103.10141"
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
        displayName="Clinical Indication">
      <code>
        <value xsi:type = "CD">
          <originalText>headache, fever and sore throat</originalText>
        </value>
      </code>
    </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
<!--List.flag-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
  <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
    <code code="288533004"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
      codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
      displayName="Change values"/>
    <!--List.change-description-->
    <text>Prescription for headache, fever, sore throat</text>
    <value code="new"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
      codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
      displayName="New"
      xsi:type="CD"/>
  </observation>
  </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=y -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
  <substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
```

```
<templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
<id root="ed911568-9b57-4d53-8f38-9b92ca8d20dd"/>
<!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
<text>
    <reference value="#ed58490f-903c-4b8b-af6f-d30fad3df7e8"/>
</text>
<!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
<statusCode code="active"/>
<!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
<consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
        <manufacturedMaterial>
            <code code="45219011000036101"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                displayName="sumatriptan 100 mg tablet">
                <originalText>sumatriptan 100 mg tablet</originalText>
            </code>
        </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
</consumable>
<!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="103.10141"
            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
            displayName="Clinical Indication"/>
        <value xsi:type = "CD">
            <originalText>Migraine</originalText>
        </value>
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
<!--MedicationStatement.note-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
    <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="103.16044"
            codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
            codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
            displayName="Additional Comments"/>
        <text>Patient advised that usually takes sumatriptan for migraine; they took one
            tablet during the event, and during the event they were given one tablet to take home.</text>
    </act>
</entryRelationship>
<!--List.entry.flag-->
<entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="288533004"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
            codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
            displayName="Change values"/>
        <!--List.change-description-->
        <text>Migraine</text>
        <value code="nochange"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
            codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
            displayName="Unchanged"
            xsi:type="CD"/>
    </observation>
</entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
</act>
</entry>
</section>
</component>
</structuredBody>
</component>
</ClinicalDocument>
```

## B.2 Event Summary example 2

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

### Example B.2. Event Summary example 2

```
<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.  
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where  
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->
```

```
<ClinicalDocument classCode="DOCCLIN" moodCode="EVN" xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"  
xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org/v3-example"  
xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"  
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"  
xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3 ../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">  
<typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>  
<!-- Put content here -->  
</ClinicalDocument>
```

## B.3 Event Summary example 3

This informative appendix provides an example instance that conforms to the requirements of this implementation guide.

### Example B.3. Event Summary example 3

```
<!-- This example is illustrative only. This fragment cannot be treated as clinically valid.
While every effort has been taken to ensure that the examples are consistent with the message specification, where
there are conflicts with the written message specification or schema, the specification or schema will take precedence. -->

<ClinicalDocument classCode="DOCCLIN" moodCode="EVN" xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"
  xmlns:ex="urn:hl7-org:v3-example"
  xmlns:ext="http://ns.electronichealth.net.au/Ci/Cda/Extensions/3.0"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3 ../../library/schema_au_published/CDA-AU-V1_0.xsd">

<typeId root="2.16.840.1.113883.1.3" extension="POCD_HD000040"/>
  <!-- ClinicalDocument templateId -->
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100033" extension="1.0"/>
  <!-- Event Summary document model templateId -->
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100020" extension="1.0"/>
  <!-- CDA Rendering Specification templateId-->
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.100.226" extension="1.0"/>
  <id root="f292365afea5-4d5a-969e-179e763c6810" />
  <!-- Composition.type -->
  <code code="34133-9"
    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
    codeSystemName="LOINC"
    displayName="Summary of episode note" />
  <!-- Composition.title -->
  <title>Event Summary</title>
  <effectiveTime value="201606071639+1000" />
  <confidentialityCode nullFlavor="NA" />
  <languageCode code="en-AU" />
  <!-- Composition.status -->
  <ext:completionCode code="F"
    codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101.104.20104"
    codeSystemName="NCTIS Document Status Values"
    displayName="Final" />

  <!-- Composition.subject :: recordTarget (Patient with Mandatory Identifier) -->
  <recordTarget typeCode="RCT">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100004" extension="1.0"/>
    <patientRole classCode="PAT">
      <id root="f793801a-614c-4f3e-b6a1-5a453c616607" />
      <patient>
        <!-- Patient.name -->
        <name>
          <given>Gough</given>
          <family>Goodpatient</family>
        </name>
        <!-- Patient.gender -->
        <administrativeGenderCode code="male"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.2"
          codeSystemName="AdministrativeGender"
          displayName="Male" />
        <!-- Patient.identifier -->
        <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
          <ext:id assigningAuthorityName="Centrelink customer reference number"
            root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.879.369274" extension="307111942H" />
          <ext:code code="HC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203" />
        </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
      </patient>
    </patientRole>
  </recordTarget>

  <!-- Composition.author :: author (PractitionerRole with Practitioner with Mandatory Identifier) -->
  <author typeCode="AUT">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100006" extension="1.0"/>
    <!-- Composition.date -->
    <time value="20190530100000+1000" />
    <assignedAuthor>
      <id root="72fb1fc8-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd" />
      <!-- PractitionerRole.code -->
      <code code="253111"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
        displayName="General Practitioner">
        <originalText>GP</originalText>
      </code>
      <!-- Practitioner.telecom -->
      <telecom use="WB" value="mailto:bhelpman@example.devonportgp.com.au" />
      <!-- PractitionerRole.practitioner -->
      <assignedPerson>
        <!-- assignedPerson (Base Practitioner) -->
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100040" extension="1.0"/>
        <!-- Practitioner.name -->
        <name use="L">
          <given>Barry</given>
          <family>Helpman</family>
          <suffix qualifiers="AC">M.D.</suffix>
        </name>
        <!-- PractitionerRole.identifier or Practitioner.identifier -->
      </assignedPerson>
    </assignedAuthor>
  </author>

```

```
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
  <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
    assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
  <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
  </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
<ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
  <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
    extension="5544887B"
    assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
  <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
  <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
  </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</assignedPerson>
<!-- PractitionerRole.organization -->
<representedOrganization>
  <!-- representedOrganization (Base Organization) -->
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100039" extension="1.0"/>
  <id root="ad89f638-ee4b-4a12-a6d8-2a3613343d7d"/>
  <!-- Organization.name -->
  <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
  <!-- Organization.telecom -->
  <telecom use="WP" value="mailto:reception@example.dfdc.com.au"/>
  <telecom use="WP" value="fax:0385435557"/>
  <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
  <!-- Organization.address -->
  <addr use="PST">
    <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
    <city>Strahan</city>
    <state>TAS</state>
    <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
    <country>Australia</country>
  </addr>
  <!-- Organization.identifier -->
  <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
    <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
      assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
    <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
  </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
  </representedOrganization>
</assignedAuthor>
</author>

<!-- custodian (Organization with Mandatory Identifier) -->
<custodian>
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100002" extension="1.0"/>
  <assignedCustodian>
    <representedCustodianOrganization>
      <id root="ad89f638-ee4b-4a12-a6d8-2a3613343d7d"/>
      <!-- Organization.name -->
      <name>Devonport Family Medicine Clinic</name>
      <!-- Organization.telecom -->
      <telecom use="WP" value="tel:0385435556"/>
      <!-- Organization.address -->
      <addr use="PST">
        <streetAddressLine>LPO Box 235</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Strahan</city>
        <state>TAS</state>
        <postalCode>7468</postalCode>
      </addr>
      <!-- Organization.identifier -->
      <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
        <ext:id root="1.2.36.51824754455"
          assigningAuthorityName="Devonport Family Medicine Clinic"/>
        <ext:code code="XX" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
      </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    </representedCustodianOrganization>
  </assignedCustodian>
</custodian>

<!-- attester (Legal Attester) -->
<legalAuthenticator>
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100012" extension="1.0"/>
  <time value="201606071639+1000"/>
  <signatureCode code="S"/>
  <assignedEntity>
    <!-- attester (Legal Attester) indicating same entity as the author via the same id -->
    <id root="72fb1fcfa-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd"/>
  <assignedPerson>
    <name>
      <given>Barry</given>
      <family>Helpman</family>
      <suffix qualifier="AC">M.D.</suffix>
    </name>
    <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
      <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1003.0.8003619900015717"
        assigningAuthorityName="HPI-I"/>
      <ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
        <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
      </ext:assigningGeographicArea>
    </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
    <ext:asEntityIdentifier classCode="IDENT">
      <ext:id root="1.2.36.174030967.0.2"
        extension="5544887B"
        assigningAuthorityName="Medicare Provider Number"/>
      <ext:code code="PRN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.12.203"/>
    </ext:asEntityIdentifier>
  </assignedPerson>
```

```

<ext:assigningGeographicArea classCode="PLC">
    <ext:name>National Identifier</ext:name>
</ext:assigningGeographicArea>
</ext:asEntityIdentifier>
</assignedPerson>
</assignedEntity>
</legalAuthenticator>

<!-- Patient.generalPractitioner (Base Practitioner) -->
<participant typeCode="PART">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100037" extension="1.0"/>
    <functionCode code="PCP"/>
    <associatedEntity classCode="PROV">
        <associatedPerson classCode="PSN">
            <!-- Practitioner.name -->
            <name use="L">
                <prefix>Dr.</prefix>
                <given>Good</given>
                <family>Doctor</family>
            </name>
        </associatedPerson>
    </associatedEntity>
</participant>

<!-- Composition.encounter -->
<componentOf>
<--encompassingEncounter (Summary of an Encounter for an Event)-->
    <encompassingEncounter>
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100064" extension="1.0"/>
        <id root="3d82feb6-53d9-40cc-87af-8df78c372820"/>
        <!--Encounter.class-->
        <code code="AMB">
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"
            codeSystemName="v3 Code System ActCode"
            displayName="ambulatory"/>
        <!--Encounter.period-->
        <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
            <low value="20190530090000+1000"/>
            <high value="20190530093000+1000"/>
        </effectiveTime>
    </encompassingEncounter>
</componentOf>

<component>
    <structuredBody>
        <!-- section (Medications) -->
        <component>
            <section>
                <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100061" extension="1.0"/>
                <id root="6c1bf9e7-a238-4f1f-8545-f0dbe0183cf"/>
                <!-- section (Medications).code -->
                <code code="10160-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                    codeSystemName="LOINC"
                    displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/>
                <!-- section (Medications).title -->
                <title>Medications</title>
                <!-- section (Medications).text -->
                <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
                    <table border="1">
                        <caption>Medicines List</caption>
                        <thead>
                            <tr>
                                <th>Medicine</th>
                                <th>Directions</th>
                                <th>Clinical Indication/Change description</th>
                                <th>Status</th>
                            </tr>
                        </thead>
                        <tbody>
                            <tr ID="Meds01">
                                <td>Bactrim DS - tablet</td>
                                <td>Take 2 tablets twice a day</td>
                                <td>To treat bacterial infections</td>
                                <td>New prescription</td>
                            </tr>
                            <tr ID="Meds02">
                                <td>Panadol 500mg - tablet</td>
                                <td>Take 1 tablet four times a day</td>
                                <td>For pain</td>
                                <td>New</td>
                            </tr>
                        </tbody>
                    </table>
                </text>
            <!-- act (List of Medicine Changes from an Event)-->
            <entry>
                <act classCode="ACT" moodCode="EVN">
                    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100063" extension="1.0"/>
                    <!--List.code-->
                    <code code="10160-0"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                        codeSystemName="LOINC"
                        displayName="History of Medication use Narrative"/></code>
                    <!--List.status-->
                    <statusCode code="active"/></statusCode>
                    <!--List.date-->
                    <effectiveTime value="20190530100000+1000"/>
                    <!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
                    <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">

```

```
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
  <id root="dc62bf6a-8843-4a89-9a89-713f686ee8e1"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
  <text>
    <reference value="#Meds01"/>
  </text>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
  <statusCode code="new"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="6632011000036102"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Bactrim DS film-coated tablet">
          <originalText>Bactrim DS - tablet</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <code code="103.10141"
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
        displayName="Clinical Indication">
        <value code="68566005"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Urinary tract infection"
          xsi:type="CD"/>
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!--List.flag-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="288533004"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Change values"/>
        <!--List.change-description-->
        <text>To treat bacterial infections</text>
        <value code="prescribed"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
          codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
          displayName="New prescription"
          xsi:type="CD"/>
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
  </substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
<!-- substanceAdministration (Summary Statement of Known Medicine); taken=n -->
<entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
<substanceAdministration classCode="SBADM" moodCode="EVN">
  <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100015" extension="1.0"/>
  <id root="ec23eec6-alb9-4432-aacb-2ae889be8696"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.dosage -->
  <text>
    <reference value="#Meds02"/>
  </text>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.status -->
  <statusCode code="new"/>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.medication -->
  <consumable>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedMaterial>
        <code code="54012011000036102"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Panadol 500 mg film-coated tablet">
          <originalText>Panadol 500mg - tablet</originalText>
        </code>
      </manufacturedMaterial>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </consumable>
  <!-- MedicationStatement.reasonCode -->
  <entryRelationship typeCode="RSON">
    <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
      <code code="103.10141"
        codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
        codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
        displayName="Clinical Indication">
        <value xsi:type="CD">
          <originalText>For pain</originalText>
        </value>
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
    <!--List.flag-->
    <entryRelationship typeCode="SUBJ" inversionInd="true">
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <code code="288533004"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Change values"/>
        <!--List.change-description-->
```

```

        <text>For pain</text>
        <value code="new"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.3.4.1.2.6"
              codeSystemName="MedicineItemChange"
              displayName="New"
              xsi:type="CD"/>
    </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</substanceAdministration>
</entryRelationship>
</act>
</entry>
</section>
</component>

<!-- section (Allergies) -->
<component>
<section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100069" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="e8a81398-ef49-4193-b95a-1dfaall4f54d"/>
    <!-- section (Allergies).code -->
    <code code="48765-2"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          codeSystemName="LOINC"
          displayName="Allergies &or adverse reactions"/>
    <!-- section (Allergies).title -->
    <title>Allergies and Adverse Reactions</title>
    <!-- section (Allergies).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
        <content ID="ALLERGY">No known allergies.</content>
    </text>
    <!--observation (Summary Statement of Allergy or Intolerance)-->
    <entry>
        <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100014" extension="1.0"/>
            <code code="102.05517"
                  codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                  codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                  displayName="Adverse Reaction">
            </code>
            <!--AllergyIntolerance.code-->
            <value xsi:type="CD"
                  code="716186003"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
                  codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
                  displayName="No known allergy"/>
            <!--AllergyIntolerance.clinical-Status-->
            <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                    <code code="103.32013"
                          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                          displayName="Clinical Status"/>
                    <value code="active"
                          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.118"
                          codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceClinicalStatus"
                          displayName="Active"
                          xsi:type="CD"/>
                </observation>
            <!--AllergyIntolerance.verification-Status-->
            <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
                <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
                    <code code="103.32012"
                          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
                          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
                          displayName="Verification Status"/>
                    <value code="confirmed"
                          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.116"
                          codeSystemName="AllergyIntoleranceVerificationStatus"
                          displayName="Confirmed"
                          xsi:type="CD"/>
                </observation>
            </entryRelationship>
        </observation>
    </entry>
    </section>
</component>

<!-- section (Event Overview) -->
<component>
<section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100059" extension="1.0"/>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).code -->
    <code code="101.16672"
          codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
          codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
          displayName="Event Overview"/>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).title -->
    <title>Event Details</title>
    <!-- section (Event Overview).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
        <paragraph>Patient presented for follow-up with urinary tract infection on 30 May.</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Complaining of frequent and painful urinating. Midstream urine test was done and revealed urinary infection.</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Culture and sensitivity test discovered escherichia coli sensitive to Bactrim.</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Patient was prescribed Bactrim 2 tablets twice a day, and Panadol one tablet 4 times a day.</paragraph>
        <paragraph>Patient has no allergies.</paragraph>
    </text>
    <!--encounter (Summary of Encounter for an Event)-->

```

```
<entry>
  <encounter classCode="ENC" moodCode="EVN">
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100062" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="3d82feb6-53d9-40cc-87af-8df78c372820"/>
    <!--Encounter.class-->
    <code code="AMB"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.4"
      codeSystemName="v3 Code System ActCode"
      displayName="ambulatory"/>
    <!--Encounter.encounter-description-->
    <text>Patient presented for follow-up with urinary tract infection on 30 May. Complaining of frequent and painful urinating.  
Midstream urine test was done and revealed urinary infection. Culture and sensitivity test discovered escherichia coli sensitization.  
Patient was prescribed Bactrim 2 tablets twice a day, and Panadol one tablet 4 times a day. Patient has no allergies.</text>
    <!--Encounter.status-->
    <statusCode code="finished"/>
    <!--Encounter.period-->
    <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS">
      <low value="20190530090000+1000"/>
      <high value="20190530093000+1000"/>
    </effectiveTime>
  </encounter>
</entry>
</section>
</component>

<!--section (Medical history)-->
<component>
  <section>
    <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100041" extension="1.0"/>
    <id root="db25390c-29ca-4fad-a3ff-31bc7f7767a0"/>
    <!-- section (Medical history).code -->
    <code code="101.16117"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Medical History"/>
    <!-- section (Medical history).title -->
    <title>Medical History</title>
    <!-- section (Medical history).text -->
    <text mediaType="text/x-hl7-text+xml">
      <table border="1">
        <caption>Condition Details</caption>
        <thead>
          <tr>
            <th>Condition</th>
            <th>Onset Date Time</th>
          </tr>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
          <tr>
            <td>Urinary tract infection</td>
            <td>2019-05-10</td>
          </tr>
        </tbody>
      </table>
    </text>
    <!--observation (Summary Statement of Condition)-->
    <entry>
      <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
        <templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100054" extension="1.0"/>
        <code code="282291009"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Diagnosis interpretation"/>
        <!--Condition.onset-->
        <effectiveTime>
          <low value="20190510"/>
        </effectiveTime>
        <!--Condition.code-->
        <value code="68566005"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.96"
          codeSystemName="SNOMED CT"
          displayName="Urinary tract infection"
          xsi:type="CD"/>
        <!--Condition.clinicalStatus-->
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <code code="103.32013"
              codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
              codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
              displayName="Clinical Status"/>
            <value code="active"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.156"
              codeSystemName="Condition Clinical Status Codes"
              displayName="Active"
              xsi:type="CD"/>
          </observation>
          <!--Condition.verificationStatus-->
        </entryRelationship>
        <entryRelationship typeCode="COMP">
          <observation classCode="OBS" moodCode="EVN">
            <code code="103.32012"
              codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
              codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
              displayName="Verification Status"/>
            <value code="confirmed"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.642.1.158"
              codeSystemName="ConditionVerificationStatus"
              displayName="Confirmed"
              xsi:type="CD"/>
          </observation>
        <!--Condition.verificationStatus-->
      </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
  </component>
```

```
        </observation>
    </entryRelationship>
</observation>
</entry>
</section>
</component>

<!-- Administrative Observations -->
<component>
<section>
<templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100000" extension="1.0"/>
<id root="417ad86d-8ed0-42f3-b2fc-cd9b8d6c4f8f"/>
<!-- section.code -->
<code code="102.16080"
      codeSystem="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.101"
      codeSystemName="NCTIS Data Components"
      displayName="Administrative Observations"/>
<!-- section.title -->
<title>Administrative Observations</title>
<!--Practitioner.qualification-->
<ext:coverage2 typeCode="COVBY">
    <ext:templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100038" extension="1.0"/>
    <ext:entitlement classCode="COV" moodCode="EVN">
        <ext:id root="1.2.36.1.2001.1005.56" extension="MED0000932850"
          assigningAuthorityName="AHPRA"/>
        <ext:code code="253111" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.13.62"
          displayName="General Medical Practitioner">
            <originalText>AHPRA qualification for General Practitioner</originalText>
        </ext:code>
        <ext:participant typeCode="HLD">
            <ext:participantRole classCode="ASSIGNED">
                <!-- matching technical id for the Practitioner entity -->
                <ext:id root="72fb1fca-80fb-463c-bc92-34f2b2cf0ecd"/>
            </ext:participantRole>
        </ext:participant>
        </ext:entitlement>
    </ext:coverage2>
</section>
</component>

<!--section (Diagnostic Investigations)-->
<component>
<section>
<templateId root="1.2.36.1.2001.1001.102.101.100060" extension="1.0"/>
<id root="056fa0ac-fd6d-4420-9e72-9826b2aefbf8"/>
<!-- section (Diagnostic Investigations).code -->
<code code="30954-2"
      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
      codeSystemName="LOINC"
      displayName="Relevant diagnostic tests &or laboratory data"/>
<!-- section (Diagnostic Investigations).title -->
<title>Diagnostic Investigations</title>
<!-- section (Diagnostic Investigations).text -->
<text mediaType="text/x-hl7+text+xml">
    <table border="1">
        <caption>Diagnostic results</caption>
        <thead>
            <tr>
                <th>Test</th>
                <th>Result</th>
                <th>Date</th>
            </tr>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
            <tr>
                <td>Culture and sensitivity</td>
                <td>Escherichia coli grown</td>
                <td>2019-05-10</td>
            </tr>
        </tbody>
    </table>
</text>
</section>
</component>
</structuredBody>
</component>
</clinicalDocument>
```

# Appendix C. Mapping from requirements

This informative appendix provides mapping from the data items (i.e. requirements) in *Shared Health Summary Information Requirements [NEHT2015e]*.

The table below matches the data items to the elements of the Event Summary (ES) model as shown in the Element column of the CDA Mapping table in the relevant template, and their corresponding CDA schema element(s) path from the root CDA schema element ClinicalDocument.



# References

- [DH2017o] Australian Digital Health Agency, 21 December 2017, *Clinical Documents Common Conformance Profile*, Version 1.7.  
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/resources-and-documentation/clinical-documents/ep-2563-2017-dh-2481-2017>
- [DH2018d] Australian Digital Health Agency, 01 November 2018, *Participant Model Specification*, Version 1.0.  
<https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/participant-model-specification>
- [DH2019a] Australian Digital Health Agency, 28 February 2019, *Common - Clinical Document*, Version 1.5.2.  
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-2807-2019>
- [DH2019g] Australian Digital Health Agency, Not yet published, *Event Summary FHIR Implementation Guide*, Version 1.0.  
<https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/common-clinical-document>
- [HI2011] Health Intersections, 2011, *Representation of Common Australian Identifiers in v2 and CDA*, accessed 28 November 2011.  
<http://www.healthintersections.com.au/?p=721>
- [HL7AUBIG] HL7 Australia, Continuous Integration Build, *Australian Base Profiles Implementation Guide*, v1.0.0 (Standard for Trial Use), accessed 07 March 2019.  
<http://build.fhir.org/ig/hl7au/au-fhir-base/index.html>
- [HL7CDAR2] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Clinical Document Architecture*, Release 2.  
[http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product\\_brief.cfm?product\\_id=7](http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=7)
- [HL7FHIR3] Health Level Seven, Inc., 19 April 2017, *FHIR*, Release 3 (STU), accessed 10 Mar 2019.  
<http://hl7.org/fhir/STU3/index.html>
- [HL7RIM] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Version 3 Standard – Reference Information Model*.  
[http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product\\_brief.cfm?product\\_id=77](http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=77)
- [HL7V3] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 Version 3 Standard*.  
[http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product\\_brief.cfm?product\\_id=186](http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=186)
- [HL7V3DT] Health Level Seven, Inc., January 2010, *HL7 V3 RIM, Data types and Vocabulary*.  
<http://www.hl7.org/memonly/downloads/v3edition.cfm>
- [IHTS2010] International Health Terminology Standards Development Organisation, January 2010, *SNOMED CT*, accessed 15 March 2010.  
<http://www.ihtsdo.org/snomed-ct>
- [INFO2009] Canada Health Infoway, *CDA Validation Tools: infoway\_release\_2\_2X\_18.zip*.  
<http://www.hl7.org/memonly/downloads/v3edition.cfm>
- [NEHT2011bv] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 October 2011, *Representing Coding in CDA Documents Implementation Guidance*, Version 1.0.  
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/resources-and-documentation/clinical-documents/ep-1094-2011-nehta-1097-2011>
- [NEHT2012s] National E-Health Transition Authority, 07 March 2012, *CDA Rendering Specification*, Version 1.0.  
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/resources-and-documentation/clinical-documents/ep-1094-2011-nehta-1199-2012>
- [NEHT2015b] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Event Summary Structured Content Specification*, Version 1.2.  
<https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/EP-1817-2015/NEHTA-1847-2015>
- [NEHT2015e] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Shared Health Summary Information Requirements*, Version 1.1.  
<https://developer.digitalhealth.gov.au/specifications/clinical-documents/ep-2397-2017/nehta-1837-2015>

- [NEHT2015f] National E-Health Transition Authority, 10 April 2015, *Event Summary CDA Implementation Guide*, Version 1.3.  
<https://www.digitalhealth.gov.au/implementation-resources/clinical-documents/EP-1817-2015/NEHTA-1846-2015>
- [RFC2119] Network Working Group, 1997, *Key Words for Use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels*, accessed 05 March 2019.  
<https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2119>
- [RING2009] Ringholm, 2009, *CDA Examples*, accessed 15 March 2010.  
[http://www.ringholm.de/download/CDA\\_R2\\_examples.zip](http://www.ringholm.de/download/CDA_R2_examples.zip)
- [SA2014a] Standards Australia, 2014, *AS 4846 (2014) – Person and provider identification in healthcare*.  
<http://infostore.saiglobal.com/store/details.aspx?ProductID=1753860>
- [UCUM] The Unified Code for Units of Measure, 2009, *The Unified Code for Units of Measure*, accessed 01 November 2012.  
<http://unitsofmeasure.org/trac/>

DRAFT